219

THE HISTORY OF TAMERLAN The GREAT.

Taken out of *ALHACENT*, the Emperour's Historian, and some other *Arabian* Manuscripts.

By the Lord de Sainctyon.

Now *Englished* by *M. D'Assigny*, B. D.

LONDON,
Printed for *S. Heyrick*, at *Grays-Inn-Gate* in *Holburn*, 1679.

TRINITY COLLEGE
LIBRARY.
CAMBRIDGE
C

TO THE

HIGH-BORN PRINCE,

HIS GRACE,

JAMES

Duke of Monmouth, *&c.*

IF Tamerlan *the Great were this day alive, he would doubtless approve of this most worthy Choice that I have here made of your Graces Noble Person and Name, to place at the Frontispiece of this exact Narrative of his Life and Conquests.*

He was a Soveraign Prince, of an Heroick Spirit, of an undaunted Cou-

rage, and of an admirable Conduct in War. He was call'd betimes to make use of these great Virtues at the Head of an Army, where Providence always Crowned his Actions with Success. At first he rose out of a small Province of Asia, *but in a few years, he spread the Glory of his Name and Victories, all over that part of the World. He was a Prince so exact in the Execution of Justice, and of so singular a Piety and Goodness, that the Christian Profession, as well as his own Religion, flourished all over his Dominions under his Protection, And his greatest Enemies thought themselves happy at last, to have been Conquer'd, and to be Govern'd by a* Tamerlan.

The whole Nation, Great Sir, if not the whole World, sees your Graces Noble Soul enrich'd with the same extraordinary Virtues, and divine Qualities.

lities. Providence hath also led you out betimes, and caused you to march after Tamerlan, *in the same Paths of Honour. The safety of* Europe *hath called your Grace into the Field, to shew your Valour and Conduct, to give Laws to unruly Enemies, and set Bounds to the unjust Greatness of ambitious Neighbours.*

Your Graces noble Mind, your Courage, your Fame, and Victories, appear to us as glorious in this Northern World, under our Monarch of Great-Britain, *as* Tamerlan's *ever did, either under the King of* Parthia *his Father, or the Grand* Cham *of* Tartary *his Uncle. And your Graces sincere Devotion for our Protestant Religion, your mild and courteous Behaviour, your great Affection and daily Services for the* English *Nation, have render'd your Name Sacred every where in City and Country, and caused*

cauſed us all to look upon you as a ſecond Tamerlan.

Did Providence put into your Hands the ſame Power, Opportunities, and Authority, we ſhould doubtleſs ſee, through your Graces Wiſdom and Courage, the Engliſh *Name render'd as famous all over* Europe, *and as dreadful to our proud and inſulting Neighbours, as ever the* Parthian *was to the* Moſcovites, *the* Turks, *the* Mammeluks, *and other* Barbarians, *forced to ſubmit to the Empire of* Tamerlan *the Great.*

This notable Reſemblance, together with your Graces Affability, Mildneſs, and moſt ſweet Diſpoſition, hath encourag'd me to this Preſumption, for which the greatneſs of my reſpects, the Excellency of the Hiſtory, and the Nobility of the Subject will, I hope, mediate for, and obtain a pardon from your Graces goodneſs.

If

The Dedication.

If I may be so happy in this Address to give your Grace some little satisfaction, and delight you in the reading of the brave Exploits of this Heroe, as Alexander *was in the perusal of the War-like Actions of* Achilles, *and cause your Grace to cast an Eye of Favour upon this small Treatise, and its mean Author, I shall attain to the chief End aimed at by this Dedication. God preserve your Grace for the good of this Nation, and give me leave to be in word and deed, with all humility and submission,*

Great Sir,

Your Graces most humble, most faithful, and devoted Servant,

M. D'Assigny.

The Dedication.

THE HISTORY OF *TAMERLAN* the Great.

THE Divine Providence seems to take a delight sometimes to surprise and startle the minds of men, with the strange and unexpected Revolutions and great Changes that happen in the World: Such as are the terrible Earth-quakes that bury Cities and Provinces in their Ruines, the irresistable Floods that carry all before them, the sad Fires that turn into Ashes in the twinkling of an Eye the beautiful Works and the proud Fabricks of many Ages. This Divine and wise Providence seems also to take a delight, to produce in the World, in the greatest times of need, those admirable souls and Great Men, who come as Blessings to Mankind, to banish away all Confusion and Disorder, and settle Peace and Happiness amongst men; like so many skilful Physicians they come to purge Nature from all its ill humours.

Cyrus, *Alexander*, and *Cæsar* were Agents of this Divine Providence, employed for that charitable

purpose. So likewise when *Bajazet* that cruel Emperour of the *Turks*, destroyed the Provinces of *Asia* and *Europe*, and made a havock of his Neighbours, Gods Providence chose *Tamerlan* the Great, to give a check to his Pride and Cruelty, and stop him in his full career, wherein he intended to Conquer the World.

The History of this great *Hero* I shall now represent, that it may encourage and direct all Martial Spirits in the Employment of War, and inform the rest of the World with a just and true Account of the brave and glorious Actions of this Noble Conquerour.

CHAP. I.

Of the Birth and first Years of Tamerlan.

Tamerlan signifies *Celestial Grace*. He was the Son of *Og* King of *Zagatay*, or of the *Parthians*, Nephew of the *Grand Cham* of *Tartary*, and not the Son of a vile Shepherd and Robber, as his Enemies have basely invented to discredit him, out of malice or ignorance; that the greatest Revenues and Riches of the Eastern Kings consist in the number of their Flocks and Herds, rather than in their Golden Mines, which nevertheless are also there to be found in their Dominions.

The Province of *Zagatay*, or *Sachetay*, lies West from the *Sogdians*, and is properly the ancient *Parthia*. The chief City is *Samarcande*, seated upon the River *Issarle*. It grew so mighty in riches and number of men, as well as in beauty, during the Reign of this Prince, that it may now be compared to any other City of *Asia*. When

When *Tamerlan* was happily born, in his perſon were diſcoverable from his Infancy ſo many rare ſigns of a great Courage, and of a ſweet Diſpoſition, that gladded the heart of his old Father, and obliged him to incourage thoſe Gifts of Nature, by the tuition and teaching of the rareſt perſons and Doctors of the Country. After a good and ſpeedy proficiency, this young Prince became the delight, the love, and the wonder of his people. Before he was full fifteen he had learned from his Maſters all that they could teach him for the exerciſe of his body, or to grace his mind. He had ſome inſight in the Myſteries of *Aſtrology*, and skill in *Taliſmanical Figures*, which is called the *Aſtrology* or *Divinity* of *Zoroaſter* and of the *Bactrians*, and which ſince hath been much us'd by the *Arabians*, aſwell as in riding of a Horſe, handling of a Lance, drawing of a Bow, and wreſtling. The King his Father looked upon him then as worthy to Govern the Kingdom, in which he employed him a little after; and the rather, becauſe he ſaw himſelf aged and weak, and deſired nothing more but to ſequeſter himſelf from buſineſs, and to ſerve God the reſt of his days in the contemplation of his glorious Works.

But before he accompliſhed this great Deſign, though he had for his Son all the eſteem and good opinion that he deſerv'd, he was not ſo unadviſed as to venture in ſuch young hands the Government of his Realm, without a precaution and ſufficient proviſion for his advice and counſel; for if he had done otherwiſe, he would have but expos'd his Kingdom to thoſe dangers and loſſes which are not eaſily repair'd.

To prevent all miſchiefs of that nature, he

placed neat his Son, to eaſe and direct him in the management of Affairs, *Odmar* and *Haly*, the two greateſt and wiſeſt men of the Kingdom, noted for their Noble Birth and for their Experience in Affairs, aſwell as for their other Vertues and fidelity to his Intereſt.

Tamerlan received theſe two great perſons from his Father as the tokens of his love, and ſince he never undertook any thing without their advice. He embrac'd them always with ſo much reſpect and affection, that for fear of forgetting one after his deceaſe, he wore his Ring upon his Finger, aſwell to call to mind the good ſervices that he had received from him, as to hinder him from forgetting two rare Precepts which he had given him, when he was to ſit in Judgment, and to do juſtice to his Subjects.

This noble way of acting ſoon won him the hearts of all his Subjects, ſo that they looked upon him as their life and ſoul. From hence we may obſerve, *That a mild and loving diſpoſition, together with an acknowledgment of good deeds, is the ſtrongeſt Charm that a Prince can uſe to win the ſouls of his people, and get their prayers and affections.*

In his young days, and at his firſt coming to the Crown, he enjoyed quiet and peace at home, through his Fathers care to ſcatter and ſend at a diſtance all troubleſome ſpirits, who might have diſturbed the State. But this peaceable time he employed rather in Study than in his Divertiſements; inſtead of ſpending his hours in a Bath, the greateſt delight of the *Parthians*, he ſpent them in reading of *Arabian* Books, and in meditating the Precepts of *Aſtrology*, at ſuch moments only when he had finiſhed his weightier Employments relating

to

to the Government of his Kingdom. In the discharge of which he often said, *That his good Genius did assist and help him, and that having so much favour from Heaven he could not but succeed in all his Designs.*

He had so great a care of and so much esteem for divine matters and things, and for whatsoever concern'd the Religion of his Forefathers, that he would not be perswaded to suffer any alteration. Nevertheless he gave liberty to all Religions that teach to worship *one God Creator* of all things, giving this as his Reason, *That his Divine Majesty did delight to be served and adored in divers manners.* But he was a declared and an irreconcileable Enemy of Idols and Idolaters, whom he always vexed.

He was of a middle stature, his shoulders were but narrow, his legs beautiful, his body full and well set, a comely face with good features, and his eyes so full of goodness, mildness, and majesty together, that it was no easie matter to look stedfastly upon them. Therefore the Prince was wont to turn away out of modesty his eyes from him that spoke to him, that he might finish his discourse with more confidence. He had but little hair upon his Lips and Chin, it was curl'd, very thick, and of a fine Ash-colour; he wore it long, contrary to the custom of the *Tartars*, who shave their Heads before, leaving but some few locks behind, which they cover over with their Caps, but he had almost always his head uncovered. Therefore when one of his Favourites asked him why he had not his Head shav'd as other persons of his Country; he answered, *Understand my Friend one thing which I will tell thee, because I will thereby acknowledge thy affection to me, That my Mother was of the Race of* Sam-

ſon, *therefore in remembrance of my Forefather, ſhe hath commanded me to preſerve my hair: This is the cauſe of my long hair.* This ſecret being afterwards ſpread abroad, gain'd to him the reſpect of all his Subjects, chiefly of his Army, who imagin'd therefore ſome extraordinary vertue in his hair. This belief was confirmed by his wonderful skill and ſtrength in wreſtling, becauſe the ſtrongeſt *Tartars* were not to be compared to him, and that ſuch as were foiled thought it an honour, though overcome, to ſtruggle with a Prince of ſo much reputation.

This being the right deſcription of *Tamerlan*, it is eaſie to be imagin'd, that reſt and a quiet life was not pleaſing to him. But though his aim was at Glory and Honour, he choſe rather to check his *Martial temper*, than to invade his Neighbours, and trouble their Peace without cauſe. Providence that had adopted him ſuffered not long his courage to be without exerciſe: It led him upon this great Theatre of the World, there to appear in an eminent manner. We ſhall ſee him next in his firſt goings out.

CHAP. II.

Tamerlan's *War with the* Moſcovites.

THE *Moſcovites* broke the Peace: they were weary of that Reſt which they had long enjoyed; thinking themſelves therefore ſo dreadful, that all their Neighbours were to ſtand in awe of them: They made ſome In-roads upon the Territories that are on this ſide of *Cazan* and *Aſtracam*, and

and that border upon both *Empires*. They had never received any dammage from these Inhabitants: Their intention was only to conquer them without any Right or Claim. They enter'd therefore amongst them with their Army, and cau'sd every thing to pass through Fire and Sword, sparing neither Towns nor Villages; besides, they plunder'd a City bordering upon *Zagatay*, or *Sachetay*, and under *Tamerlan*'s protection.

In this surprise, these poor Inhabitants, being not able to stop the fury of those Northern *Barbarians*, sought a remedy from their Tears and Complaints, and from the Power and Justice of their Protector. *Tamerlan* was sensible of their wrongs, and the affront done to his Person and Government, by the Insolency of the *Moscovites*, who had discover'd so little regard of him. He promis'd therefore to punish them, and check their cruelty and boldness: For that intent he takes advice, what to do in this juncture, from his two faithful Counsellors, who encouraged him to declare an open War with the *Moscovites*, in defence of his People and Confederates.

In the mean time *Odmar* and *Haly*, according to their Princes expectation and Orders, were busie in gathering together all their Troops dispersed in Garrisons, to raise new Souldiers, and form a considerable Body, with the assistance of their Allies. At the first beginning of the Spring, *Tamerlan*, at the Head of his Army, marches against his Enemies, who were encamped upon the Borders, near the River *Maspha*.

The *Moscovites* were in all one hundred thousand Foot, and fourscore thousand Horse; most of them old Souldiers, who had been in many Encounters with their Neighbours.

Of this fourscore thousand Horse, ten thousand were *Polanders*, sent from the King of *Poland*, newly re-united by a League with the *Moscovites*: Besides there were eight thousand *Hungarians*, and many Noblemen of that Nation, under the command of a great Lord, called *Uladislaus*. *Tamerlan* had in his Army threescore thousand Horse, and one hundred and fifty thousand Foot-men, brought up in Armes, but they were not to be compar'd with the *Moscovites*, who had exercis'd themselves in several Campagns; whereas the *Parthians* never saw an Enemy during the Government of their King *Og*, who had always been at peace with all the World.

At the sight of the Enemy, *Tamerlan*'s warlike Courage and *Martial* fury was kept in by the fear of a mistake: He thought it therefore wisdom to take a view of their Camp, by which he understood that he could not go to them without passing at the foot of a little Hill, which they were possessed of before his coming. They had planted there six thousand of their Foot, who might have strangely gawl'd *Tamerlan*'s men, had they attempted to set upon the *Moscovites*, on that side, and yet they were necessitated to begin the assault there; but first *Tamerlan* judg'd contrary to the judgment of his Privy *Council*, that they were first to beat the Enemy from that advantageous Post, and that without engaging themselves in a Battel. The *Moscovites* were so well fortified in this place, that it was no easie matter to force them. *Tamerlan* therefore draws them down by a Stratagem: He gave Orders to twenty thousand Foot, commanded by *Haly*, seemingly to assault the Hill, and when he saw the rest of the Army drawing near to their assistance, he caused

cauſed his whole Army to paſs over the River of *Raſna*; by that means he reduced the Enemy to a neceſſity of fighting.

This proceeding of *Tamerlan* was ſucceeded by two advantages: Firſt it put his *Cavalry* in ſecurity from the Guns and Darts of this little Hill, unto which they had been otherwiſe expos'd: Next it caus'd him to ſucceed in his deſign of ending this War, which the *Moſcovite* was reſolved to protract. He was perſwaded that he could draw away his Men from this Poſt at his pleaſure, in caſe of neceſſity; and that in a Night, as he was wont, he could retreat back twenty Leagues. But he found by experience this to be a real truth, *That humane wiſdom, in that very moment when it is the moſt enlightned, is but dark and blind.*

Theſe two Armies in the mean while were in ſight of one another without engaging; for they ſtood at a ſtand, looking at what paſs'd upon the Hill, where the *Parthians*, recruited from time to time, and in ſeaſon, endeavour'd to drive from thence the *Moſcovites*, who, being aſſiſted with continual ſuccours, made a ſtout reſiſtance. The Fight laſted two hours with equal advantage on both ſides: for both Parties were encouraged by the many Witneſſes that beheld them. But *Haly*, at laſt, took this equality for an affront, or a kind of defeat. This made him call upon his Men to do their uttermoſt, to force Victory to declare for them. They obeyed his perſwaſion, and gave ſuch a vigorous onſet, that their Enemies, weary and tired out with the former aſſaults, began to give back by degrees; which when *Tamerlan*'s Men perceived, his *Parthians* ſet upon them ſo ſtoutly, that the others had no time to rally again together, but

ſhame-

shamefully fled, and forsook their Station.

This unexpected disgrace, instead of affrighting the *Moscovites*, and filling them with fears, which are the usual sequels of such kind of defeats, filled them with impatiency to be revenged, and make amends for their losses; chiefly because they were reduced to a necessity of fighting by the nearness of the Enemies approach, who had pass'd the River for that purpose, and from whom there was no flying with safety. This made them passionately desire the signal.

The *Moscovites* Army was thus embatteled. The *Van*, led by the *Prince* of *Russia* the *Emperours* Son, was composed of five and twenty thousand Horse, *Poles*, *Hungarians*, and *Moscovites*, in a Body. They charged with their Lances in double Files, leaving behind a sufficient distance to retreat, but this prov'd to their disadvantage.

The main Battel, where their greatest strength was, consisted of forty thousand Horse, followed by all their Infantry. The *Emperour* was there in Person, with the greatest part of the *Lords* of his *Court*. The Reer was a great Squadron of ten thousand Horse, in a square Body, of their best and compleatest Troops.

Tamerlan's Army march'd in another order: This Prince had divided all his *Cavalry* into nineteen squadrons, every one consisting of six thousand Horse, only his own squadron had ten thousand, and his *Infantry* stood in Battalions.

Odmar led the *Van* of nine squadrons of Horse, having forty thousand Foot upon the Wings, twenty thousand on each hand.

The Body was commanded by *Tamerlan*, having ten squadrons of Horse, his own in the middle,

dle, and fifty thousand Foot, all chosen Men, the ablest of his Army.

The *Prince* of *Tanais*, his Cousin, brought up the Reer, having forty thousand Foot in six Divisions, and three thousand Horse, named *Oliacks*, or Dragoons, to second them.

The *Parthians*, encouraged with a prosperous success upon the Hill, waited for nothing but for the Signal, to fall on their Enemies. And *Tamerlan* himself, when he saw them advance in so good order, to save them the trouble of marching part of the way, met them in the middle, sending his orders to *Odmar* to go forward: But this wise and experienced *Captain*, who alone was authorised by his credit and long experience in War, to oppose the desires of his *Prince*, sent him back word, that he would stop where he was; that he would wait upon the Hill for the Enemy, and would not lose the advantage gain'd already of the higher Ground, of the Wind and Sun. Three things that help'd them to win the day, and that incommoded so much the *Moscovites* Army, that during the Encounter they had always Dust in their Eyes, so that by this means they were less able to see to the wants of their Army.

Though at this time *Tamerlan* saw nothing in the Countenances, and on the Faces of his Souldiers, but that which promis'd success and happiness, yet to animate them the more, he thought it fit to speak to them in this manner.

Tamer-

Tamerlan's *Speech to his Army.*

'TIS neither for Riches, my dear Companions, nor for larger Bounds to my Empire, that we are to fight this Day: 'Tis for that which is far more excellent and noble: 'Tis for the Glory and Honour of our Nation: 'Tis to shew these Enemies before us, that we are the same Parthians who put a stop to the Roman Conquests; the same who were not to be daunted by those Lords of the World. These that stand against you have neither their Courage nor Virtue. They are but a rabble led on by Insolency and Brutality, who would never be so audacious were it not for their numbers. I shall only recommend to you the remembrance of your Ancestors Glory, and these considerations; that your Prince is in the Encounter with you; that he never knew what it is to run away, or flye from an Enemy; that he hath made you pass over the River never to go back without Victory in your Hands; and that he puts all his trust upon your undaunted Courages and Faithfulness.

These words caus'd strange Transports in the minds of the Souldiers, which made them break out into loud cries to be led on to the Battel. Their furiousness was so great, that they were not to be kept in at the sight of the Enemy. *Odmar* soon satisfied them, by sending to *Tamerlan* for the Sign, and word of Command, when he saw the time convenient; but he was prevented by the *Moscovites*, who charged first, and gave a furious onset. The *Parthians* received them with an undaunted resolution, which had caused them to give back, if *Odmar*, at that time, had not by his fall disorder'd his squadron. By this accident his *Ca-*

valry

valry began to ſhake, and was afterwards broken, and himſelf hurried away in the Croud; ſo that he was forced, after a conſiderable loſs of Men, to ſhelter himſelf under the left Wing of his *Infantry*, on that ſide of the Mountain whither the Prince had ſent already ſix thouſand Horſe as a recruit.

When he was mounted again, he rallied all his Men that he could pick up, and fell upon the ſides of the *Moſcovites* Army, where the *Hungarians* were, who this day behaved themſelves ſo bravely, that only with three thouſand Men they broke through *Tamerlan*'s Battel. At this he retreated, according to the *Parthians* manner, which made the Enemies imagin them to run away. This fond conceit had ſo puft them up, that they thought the Victory to be already in their Hands: But aſſoon as the Reer was come up, led by the *Prince* of *Tanais*, who had rallied together about fourteen thouſand Horſe, and all the Foot; he obliged the *Moſcovites* to run away in their turn, after ſuch extraordinary reſiſtance, that one may juſtly ſay, that their Vertue and Courage was forced to yield to the greater number.

When the *Parthians* perceiv'd that Victory ſmil'd upon them, they purſued their advantage ſo fiercely, that their Enemies had neither time to rally nor to underſtand themſelves.

Tamerlan was here wounded in the Forehead, and near the left Eye, having left two Horſes kill'd under him.

The *Moſcovites* Army was totally routed, many Lords and chief Officers taken Priſoners; the *Emperour* himſelf was once fallen into the Hands of a *Parthian* Souldier *incognito*, but he happily ſav'd himſelf, and met with ten thouſand Horſe that had not been

been broken; with them he retreated ten Leagues, and for his greater ſecurity he paſs'd over a River in the Night, beyond which he rallied together all that he could ſave of his Army.

His *Cavalry* behav'd themſelves in the Battel like Men of Courage, but when they ſaw themſelves forſaken of the Foot in the hotteſt Encounter, when they were fiercely charged, and Fortune ſeem'd to turn them her back, they were then forc'd to yield to the *Conquerour*. They ſuffer'd therefore more than the *Infantry*, that ſav'd themſelves along the Mountains in the dark of the night, which favour'd them in all their flight.

Tamerlan, having purſued them three Leagues, return'd to the Field, where he ſolemnly gave God the praiſe for the Victory obtained.

The next day aſſoon as it was light he review'd all his Army, and underſtood that he had loſt not above ſeven or eight thouſand Horſe, and between three and four thouſand Foot; whereas the *Moſcovites* wanted ſeven and twenty thouſand Foot, and about fifteen or ſixteen thouſand Horſe.

We muſt acknowledge that *Odmar*, this day, was the ſafety of his Prince and of the whole Army; and that after his diſgrace he behaved himſelf wonderfully well and wiſely, in that he aſſaulted the Enemy upon the Flanks, when they had beaten both the *Van* and the *Main Battel*, and were going to fall upon the Reer, led by the *Prince* of *Tanais*, under whoſe Wings *Tamerlan* was retreated. If *Odmar* had not acted in this manner, the *Moſcovites* would have doubtleſs, and with eaſe, defeated the *Reer*, and won the honour of that glorious day. By this 'tis eaſie to underſtand, how great is the advantage of that Commander, who having pitch'd upon

upon a Field, and choſen a favourable Ground and Place, waits ſtedfaſtly for his Enemies coming, chiefly when he hath both Wind and Sun to fight with him. *Tamerlan* forgot not to mind his Souldiers and Captains of this happineſs. It is alſo certain, that when the *Reer*, is well commanded it is able to reſtore the Battel when it is in a moſt deſperate condition, and to ſnatch the Victory out of the hands of the ſtouteſt Enemies.

Aſſoon as *Tamerlan*, as I have already ſaid, had given thanks to God, and taken a review of his Army, he commanded all the dead, both his own men and the Enemies to be buried, and afterwards he rewarded all thoſe that had well behaved themſelves in the Fight. But his joy for the Victory was qualified with the grief for the death of *Haly*; he was killed with an Arrow, as he was going to the Fight, after that he had gain'd the Mountain, and performed Actions worthy of an Immortal Glory. *Tamerlan* caus'd his Body to be embalmed, and to remain with him in his own Tent, till he return'd to *Samarcande*, where he cauſed a ſtately Sepulchre to be made for him, which renders his name famous in ſucceeding Ages, and gave a beginning to the glorious Structures, which he cauſed afterwards to be erected in his *Capital* City, and which have made it to be one of the moſt famous Cities of the World.

Tamerlan, after this Victory, was not puft up with Pride, as ſome of his Age are in ſuch great ſucceſſes; many times they are ſo apt to forget themſelves, that they become unſufferable to their beſt Friends. But after the ſlaughter, when he beheld ſo many thouſands reeking in their Blood, he lamented at the hard and unavoidable fate of ſuch

as

as command in great Armies; and addressing himself to those that were about him. *O how happy is my Father in his choice of Peace, and in preferring a solitary and quiet life to this troublesome, painful, and cruel employment of a Souldier, which he must sometimes embrace that governs a Kingdom. Is it not grievous, that such an one cannot purchase to himself Glory, but by the Death of so many millions of his own Species, and oftentimes the destruction of his dearest Friends.* In this manner *Tamerlan* receiv'd, with displeasure, such bloody successes purchas'd at the price of so many lives.

In the mean while he supply'd the duties of his place, and gave Orders to advance into the *Moscovites* Country; marching after their flying Army that were rallied into a Body of thirty thousand Horse, which, together with the Foot, seem'd to be willing to venture another Battel, but their Emperour had no such resolution, when he saw the *Parthians* so soon at his Heels, ready to enter into his Country, where the People were frighted at the approach of so victorious an Army. To secure himself and his Men, he passed over the River of *Nifort*: on the other side he called together a General *Council* of *Officers*, who advis'd him, for the preservation of his Subjects, to send a solemn *Embassie* to *Tamerlan*, with Overtures of Peace, rather than to hazard another Battel against a *Prince* who had justice on his side. They were the sooner invited to this, by the generous behaviour of *Tamerlan* with the Prisoners that he had taken; for thereby he seem'd to give an assurance, that he would not refuse reasonable offers of Peace, and that after he had shewn sufficient proofs of his Courage and Power, he would likewise give some Tokens of his

his Moderation and Generosity. In pursuance of this Design, the *Moscovite* sends him *Embassadors* to treat of Peace, and offer all possible amends for the wrongs sustained by his Subjects In-roads into *Tamerlan*'s Country.

When the *Embassadors* were arriv'd at *Tamerlan*'s *Camp*, they found a most obliging reception. He was so far from insulting over their unhappiness, that he seem'd to pity them, and treated them with so much kindness, that though a *Conquerour*, he seem'd to have as much modesty as the Conquered. They declared that they were come in their Masters name to desire a Peace, upon such Conditions as he should propose, which they expected would be favourable, for they were confident that he would use his Victory with moderation, which he was to take rather as a kind gift of Fortune, upon which no person can settle his assurance, than an evident proof of the greatness of his Forces. He answer'd them, that he had taken up Armes only to protect his Subjects and Confederates from the insults of the *Moscovites*; and if they had prov'd happy and successful, he acknowledg'd himself to be therefore indebted to the great *God of Hosts*, who had favour'd the justice of his Cause: That because he held and had received this advantage from his pure goodness, he was not therewith puft up with pride; that they might have learn'd so much from the manner of proceeding of the *Parthians*, who had it recommended to them from their Predecessors, *not to want courage in adversity, nor to be insolent in prosperity; but to observe a moderation in both, and seek the execution of Justice.* He told them, that it was but just that they should give some satisfaction to the *Conquerour*, and promise

never to moleſt or trouble his Allies; that they ſhould pay down all the Expences of the War, which amounted to three hundred thouſand *Ducats*, and that they ſhould become Tributaries, and give him yearly one hundred thouſand Ducats; and that for the performance of theſe conditions, they ſhould deliver *Hoſtages*, which were to be renewed every year; and that he for his part would grant them peace, and ſend home all their Priſoners of War.

Theſe Conditions were readily accepted, ſo that *Tamerlan*, full of glory and ſatisfaction, return'd to *Samarcande* to his Father, who was ſo much diſintereſſed in the affairs of the world, that theſe *proſperities* of his Son wrought no alteration upon his countenance, and in his diſcourſe, no more than in his mind.

But every where in the *Princes* march he was received in *State* with *Arches* of Triumph, with Sports, and all the marks of a publick joy and pomp, which *Tamerlan* accepted as the ſigns of his Subjects affections with a grateful acknowledgment of their love.

In theſe great cauſes of publick joy he ſeem'd to be very moderate and modeſt; when a ſolemn *Embaſſy* came to him with rich Preſents, to congratulate his Victory, from the *Grand Cham* of *Tartary* his *Uncle*, with the offer of his only Daughter in marriage, promiſing to cauſe all his Subjects to acknowledge him as the *Heir* of his *Empire*, becauſe he was his neareſt Kin, and had no hopes in his old age to be Father of any more Children.

This pleaſing news was welcom to this young *Prince*, and the rather, becauſe by this great Succeſſion, he was in hopes to be able to put in execu-

tion

tion the mighty things that he design'd in his mind, which should immortalize his Name. He prepared himself with all possible diligence for this journey towards *Quinsay*, where the *Emperour* his Uncle liv'd. He was by his Orders received, as in Triumph, by all the great *Lords* of the *Court*, as well as by all the Inhabitants of this great City, who honour'd his arrival with the richest shews, because he was one day to be their *Soveraign*, and the disposer of their lives and fortunes.

The days immediately after his magnificent Entry were spent in sports and gallantry, in Plays, Races, Encounters, and other Divertisements, in which the vain-glorious *Tartars* were glad to shew their address and dexterity.

Yet *Tamerlan* met with none there that could beat him in all these Exercises. He was so expert in them, in shooting with Bow and Arrows, and in fencing with a sharp Sword, that he gain'd the admiration and love of all his Subjects.

At the end of six days spent in these delights, the Emperour caus'd him to be solemnly crowned, with the applause and consent of all sorts of men, for the Prince was desirous that this Solemnity should precede that of his Marriage, that his Right to the *Imperial Crown* might be better secur'd, and that it might not seem that the *Empire* fell to him by the marriage of his Wife, but by a Lineal Descent, for Daughters in that Country cannot inherit the Crown.

Immediately after *Tamerlan* was married with all the splendour and glory imaginable. In this occasion, all the magnificence and pomp of the old *Rome* seem'd to appear at *Quinsay*, to render this Solemnity more glorious.

After the Consummation of the Marriage, *Tamerlan* spent two Months at this *Court*, with all the satisfaction and honour that he could desire, for he was mightily beloved, and generally look'd upon as the only hope of the *Empire* of *Tartary*. But at last his natural inclination to return into his own City of *Samarcande*, where he took more delight than in any other place of the World, together with the desire to shew himself to his own Subjects as the Successor of the greatest Empire of the World, prevail'd upon all other considerations, and oblig'd him to take leave, with his beloved Spouse, of his Father-in-law, and of all the Friends that he had got in that Court. He arriv'd in safety with the Princess to this City, where he was expected with the longing of his people. We must acknowledge that the abode is very pleasant, as well in regard of its situation, as for a beautiful River that waters it, and renders it one of the richest thereabouts for Trade, and the fertility of the Soil. At his arrival he met there with the Embassadours of several Princes, some were come to congratulate him upon his new Promotion, others to make a League with him, others to avoid his displeasure, that they might not have him for an Enemy. The most pleasing Embassie was that of the Emperour of *Moscovy*; for besides the stately gifts, several beautiful Horses, and the richest Furs of the Country, as *black Foxes*, and *Sables*, which the Embassadours brought, he saw himself freed from the apprehension which he had conceiv'd upon the news that this Prince did gather together his Army. He understood that it was to march against *Poland*, and some other Neighbours. The *Poles* solicited in vain the Prince by their Envoys, and by some

ſome of the chief of the Court, whom they had gain'd to ſend Succours. They alledg'd to perſwade him, that the *Moſcovite* was but a reconciled Enemy, that he would quickly become more dreadful if he met with ſucceſs in this attempt; and if he could overcome ſo great a Kingdom as *Poland* is, to add it to his former Dominions, that then it would be too late to ſeek a remedy to prevent an evil, which was now to be hindered by ſending ſome ſuccours and aſſiſtance to the *Polanders*, who would ever after become the *Parthians* Scouts on that ſide of their Empire, and watch over the actions of their common Enemy: Beſides, it is a general rule amongſt Princes, not to ſuffer their Neighbours to grow too great, for fear of the uſual conſequence. Theſe reaſons made no impreſſion upon *Tamerlan*'s mind: This was all the anſwer he return'd, *That he had given to the* Moſcovite *the deareſt thing that he had in the world, namely, his Faith, and that he would not be the firſt to break it; but if on the other part he did offer to violate the Treaty, he knew how to puniſh and bring him to reaſon, ſeeing that he had been able to overcome him when he had nothing but the Kingdom of the* Parthians, *which is but a little Province of* Tartaria; *and that now that he was become the Lord of ſo great an Empire, he had leſs reaſon to ſtand in fear of him: that he was fully perſwaded, that in obſerving the rules of Equity and Juſtice with all the world, he had reaſon to expect that his Sword would be able to make way into new Empires, and other Kingdoms; and that whiles the* Moſcovites *were imployed and buſie in their deſigns, he would endeavour to proceed on in his purpoſes, to get to himſelf honour and glory: that the Peace concluded and ſworn to the* Moſcovites, *was known to all the Neighbours, and*

should never be broken by him; besides, that it was honourable to himself, and advantagious to his people. He told them, *that he knew for certain that God punishes commonly Princes who lightly ingage themselves in unjust wars and quarrels; and that this Lesson having been learn'd and carefully practis'd by his Fore-fathers, had been a means to raise and establish his Family, and caused it to continue for three hundred years safe and secure, by this observation of the Rules of Justice; so that in all that time none of his Predecessors have ever been cross'd with unsuccessful attempts, for the God of Hosts is a lover of Right and Justice.* He told them, *that if he had, as some declar'd, so great a delight in War, and so earnest a desire to appear in action, he had means enough, without committing injustice, to satisfie his mind, by requiring from some of his Neighbours the Lands which they had taken from the King his Father, who had never demanded any restitution, out of a carelessness for the world, or an earnest inclination for Peace: that in case of a refusal, it would be just and glorious for him to recover his poor Subjects, and free them from the tyranny of an unlawful Power.*

Odmar, who had been one of the most earnest persons to perswade him to assist the *Polanders*, with an intention to weaken the *Moscovites*, yielded, or seem'd at least to yield to these reasons. He was mightily ravish'd with the justice and equity of *Tamerlan*'s discourse, and to consider how he moderated his courage with the Rules of Reason: And though the judgment of many of the wisest of the *Privy Council*, grounding their opinions upon the antipathy of both Nations, and the difference of Religions, was contrary to that of *Tamerlan*, they could not prevail to make him alter his resolution. *Odmar* alone knowing the cause,

streng-

ſtrengthen'd it the more; ſo that it overcame the advice of thoſe who ſupported their opinion by undeniable Maxims of State, and the experience of many Ages. *Tamerlan* nevertheleſs underſtood very well that they had good reaſons on their ſide, and that by reſiſting their judgments he acted againſt the rules of humane wiſdom; and it may be he had followed their advice, if it had not been for another great deſign which he had found, the *Great Cham* was the firſt Author of it in a Conference at *Quinſay*, he caus'd him to reſolve upon it: only *Odmar* had been privy to it; for there diſcourſing of the weighty Affairs of the Empire, they took together a reſolution to carry the War into *China*, as well to drive thoſe people into their ancient bounds over which they had paſs'd, as to ſecure on that ſide the Empire of *Tartary*. In the mean whiles preparations were ſecretly made for this great Enterpriſe, for which the Prince had a mighty fancy, without diſcovering his mind. He depended upon the ſuccours which the Emperour his Uncle had promis'd, and with which he was confident to re-eſtabliſh the *Tartarians* in their ancient poſſeſſions, and that he ſhould gain the Victory, becauſe he had Juſtice on his ſide, which doubtleſs would favour him in his undertaking. Whatever inclination he had naturally for War, he had thought it a crime to ingage himſelf in a quarrel only out of a motive of ambition, or for pleaſure, and he had look'd upon himſelf as the Author of all thoſe deſolations, diſorders, and miſeries which accompany and follow War: Therefore he often deſired of God the Spirit of Wiſdom and Diſcretion, and the power to overcome his own paſſions, which he would ſometimes ſay was a

more glorious Victory for a Prince, than that which wins for him Kingdoms and Empires. Therefore when he could find Justice on his side, and see that she did incourage his strong inclination for War, then his Soul was fully satisfied in it self, sending forth out of his eyes, and upon his countenance, certain motions which signified his joy and inward contentment; chiefly when he was to demand his own Territories, to free his Subjects from slavery, or deliver his Allies from an apparent oppression.

There was never a Prince less guilty of presumption: he was never angry when his judgment was oppos'd, but rather well pleas'd when he was overcome by stronger reasons than his own; therefore he honour'd and respected so highly wise and vertuous men, that without any regard to their Rank or Dignity, as soon as he could hear of any, though in the deepest misery, he was wont to send for him, receiving him in this obliging manner; *My friend, I intreat thee let me be a partaker of thy Wisdom, and I will make thee a partaker of my Riches.*

Upon this subject he did often complain, *that he had many gifts offered to him of Gold, Silver, Jewels, and rich Moveables, but very few did offer him those Ornaments and Graces which are needful to govern well so many differing Nations that he had in his Empire.*

Amongst the chief Officers of his Court, and dearest Friends, there was a *Genoese*, a Christian, named *Axalla*, who had been brought up with him from his Cradle, and for whom the *Parthians* had a great respect. He was the chief incourager to set the Prince on to great and noble Actions, and worthy Enterprises. The difference in Religion never hinder'd *Tamerlan* from listning to him, and believing

lieving him; for, as I said before, when God alone, the Creator of Heaven and Earth was worshipped, he never troubled himself, nor enquir'd into the differing Modes of worship. He was wont to say, *that it did become the greatness of the Divine Majesty, to be served and adored by all the Nations of the Earth, in divers manners, according to the diversity of people.* But he hated all *Idolaters*, and would not suffer them to abide in his Dominions: So that the *Christian Faith* which *Axalla* profes'd openly, hinder'd him not from enjoying and possessing the greatest honours and dignities of *Tamerlan*'s Army and Court.

CHAP. III.

The War proclaim'd by Tamerlan *against the King of* China, *but stopt by the Revolt of a* Calix, *a great Lord of* Tartary; *his defeat, and Execution.*

WHen *Tamerlan* had privately made sufficient preparations for the Expedition that he had promis'd his Uncle, not only for the reasons already mentioned, but also because it tended to the Publick Peace, to imploy the Subjects of so great an Empire in a Forreign War; for otherwise either their numbers, or their stirring dispositions, might have proved prejudicial to the *State*, every one was surprised to see that the Cloud that had been long a gathering, was going to fall upon *China*. The King of this large Country, who is named *the Off-spring of the Sun*, expected no such matter; But to acquaint him with the reasons of such

such great preparations, Embassadours were sent to him, to require a restitution of all the Lands, Estates, and Feedings, which he had taken from the *Tartars*, contrary to the last Treaties. These Lands are lying beyond a River called *Tachii*, and beyond that famous Wall which bound both Empires, and which the King of *China* caus'd to be built to secure himself and people from the frequent Inroads of the warlike and restless *Tartarians*. What answer this proud *Monarch* would make to this Embassie was known before; therefore all the Troops were commanded to advance and hasten to their general Rendezvous.

The *Parthians* were to meet at *Hirdas of Baschir*, where the whole Army was to joyn them; but the *Tartarians* were ordered to gather together in the Wilderness of *Erginul*, where *Tamerlan* with all his Forces was to come to them at a certain day.

The *Grand Cham's* Army had two hundred thousand fighting men, all well disciplin'd and inur'd to labour and pains. In this Army besides were several considerable Lords, and worthy Commanders, who had render'd themselves famous in many Encounters and Wars, in which the Emperour, before the decline of his Age, had been ingag'd, and by which he had inlarg'd the bounds of his great Empire.

When *Tamerlan's* Embassadours were return'd out of *China*, they brought this insolent answer, that this proud Prince, puff'd up with a strange conceit of his own power, wonder'd that the King of the *Parthians* was so bold to make War upon him; that he judg'd it more reasonable for him to rest satisfied with that which he could take away from him with his mighty Army; that he regarded

not

not the progress that *Tamerlan* had made with his Forces, nor their successes already, they were too weak to be compared with the numerous Armies of the *Chineses*.

This proud Answer caus'd all deliberation to cease. *Tamerlan* instantly sent a Messenger to the Emperour, to let him understand the posture of Affairs, and this vain-glorious Answer of the King of *China*. In the mean while, he gave all necessary orders for Provisions and Ammunitions to be sent to the Rendezvous of the Army from all parts, and for the *Tartars* Army to advance forward, with an intention to joyn both his Armies in few days. But before his departure, he was willing to take his leave of the King his Father, and recommend his just Cause and Expedition to his Prayers.

This good Parent being sensibly mov'd at the goodness and piety of his Son, imbrac'd him several times. After many hearty wishes for his prosperous Expedition, he spake to him in these terms, *Farewel my Son, I shall see you no more: I feel my self departing to my final rest; I am going to exchange this perishing life, so full of misery, for another more happy.* Then he took his Royal Ring from off his Finger, and gave it to his Son, without enquiring into the causes of his Wars. The old Father call'd *Odmar*, and spoke to him to recommend his Sons concerns to his care and fidelity, in a manner so full of gravity and goodness, that he seem'd to have something in him more than humane.

After this the Prince return'd to *Samarcande*, where the Empress his Spouse was, whom he intended to carry with him in the wars, according to the Custom of that Nation. And as he was naturally very thankful for the services that he had received,

ved, he visited the Tomb of his faithful servant *Haly*, and according to the manner of his Law, he caus'd prayers to be said, during three days entire, for the peaceable rest of his Soul. Finally, he gave order to the Government of his Kingdom, and for the preservation of the Frontier Towns, and committed all to the inspection of *Samay*, a man of great worth and experience, who had tutor'd him in his young days. *Tamerlan* could not easily forget such kind of services, he had a particular respect for those that taught him Vertue; he kept for them as much affection, as if he had been still under their tuition. This generous inclination, so full of goodness, made him highly reverenced and beloved of his People. He went from *Samarcande* to *Hirdas* of *Baschir*, where his Army was quarter'd, consisting only of one hundred thousand Foot, and fifty thousand Horse. There he gave orders to the rest of the Army, to march as soon as he should send them word.

His greatest dependency was upon the Forces of the *Grand Cham* his Uncle, who mightily incourag'd this War. But when he was at the Rendezvous, he was forc'd to make a stop, because of his indisposition, occasion'd chiefly through the change of the Air, as his Physicians imagin'd.

In the mean while the Army of the *Grand Cham* was upon the march, under the Command of *Calibes*; and for fear the rumour of his Distemper should cause any disturbance in the Empire, unto which he was newly promoted, he was careful to inform by Messengers, very often, his Uncle, of the condition and temper of his Body.

He had good cause to suspect, that a certain great *Lord* of the Country, named *Calix*, was neither

ther his Friend, nor content with his Promotion, becauſe he had not been with him, to acknowledge and render him homage, as the other *Lords* of the Empire. Though at that time men diſcours'd of *Calix*, in a manner, that was able to beget a jealouſie in *Tamerlan*, his good diſpoſition would not ſuffer him to take any notice of it, neither did he think it convenient to attempt any thing during his Uncles Life, or trouble the Peace of an Empire newly put into his hands. Some thought that what he had done was out of policy, to oblige more ſtrongly to himſelf the hearts of his new Subjects, who had already a love for him; and to render himſelf more dreadful to thoſe that were angry at his Promotion, he had craftily ſuffered this Cloud to gather together, and the beginnings of a Civil War to ripen, that he might gain to himſelf more honour, credit, and reputation, by diſſipating and deſtroying it; that he was able to ſtifle it in the Cradle, for Empires are gotten and kept by the affections of the Souldiery, by treating them well and civilly, as his manner was; and that it was eaſie to diſappoint ſuch as are of a ſtirring nature with a little patience, for in time they may be deſtroyed in divers Expeditions, or they may be removed into ſeveral quarters, far from the places where they have credit, or they may be imployed in long and tedious ſervices, where they may alter their minds, and the power of doing miſchief.

In the mean while, *Tamerlan*'s delays and long abode in one place was ſubject to divers cenſures, ſome thought it was caus'd only by his diſtemper, others better inform'd, imagin'd that it was the product of a faithful advice, and good knowledge of that which was acting againſt him, which doubt-

doubtless would break out as soon as he should be on the other side of the Mountains of *Pasansu*. *Calix* expected this with great longing: as soon as he had understood that the Forces of the *Grand Cham* were beyond the River of *Mean* that runs on the other side of the Mountains, and that they were incamp'd at *Boupreu*, he thought it high time to discover his design.

For this purpose he gather'd together his chief and most intimate Friends, declaring to them, that now the time was come to disappoint all the intentions of the *Parthian*, who purposed to subdue them, and keep them under his Command; that seeing their Emperour was so unadvis'd of his own head, without the approbation of those who ought to have a share in such Elections, they for their parts should not neglect so fair an opportunity of redeeming their precious Liberties; that *Tamerlan* was diseased, the *Grand Cham* aged, the greatest part of his Army at a distance, and that there could not be offer'd a fitter opportunity to set on foot such a design; that their Enterprise was so likely to succeed, that as soon as they should set footing in the Province of *Cattay*, that the whole Country would declare for him, because his Father had govern'd it many years, and because the Inhabitants, not knowing *Tamerlan*, would believe all that he should tell them; that the Province of *Zagatay* was at a great distance from them, that *Tamerlan* would have much ado with the powerful Enemy who had mock'd his Embassie sent to prevent the War: therefore their Enterprise would doubtless succeed happily, when he should have sent to assure the Great *Cham*, that their intentions were not against his Person or Government, with promises not to forget

forget the Allegiance and Fidelity which they had sworn to keep for him, their armed posture being only to shake off the yoak of the *Parthians*, their ancient and unreconcileable Enemies, whose Tyranny they would never be perswaded to endure. Moreover, he assured them, that the Emperours decrepit age, and weak body, loving ease and rest, would not intermeddle in this quarrel, because he had no Heirs-male to succeed him: And that it was easie to destroy *Tamerlan*'s Army, by waiting for him at his return, and besieging of the Streights of *Tenduits*, after his Forces should be weakned by the Encounters with the *Chinoises*, for then they would endeavour to retreat into the Province of *Zagatay*, out of which it was no difficult matter to keep them, by besieging those narrow passages.

Calix's Speech had a good colour, it was strengthen'd with many Reasons and Insinuations. He had spent a whole year in winning the peoples favour, that he might be able to use them in due time. He prepar'd all manner of Ammunitions, and had spar'd no cost nor labour to compass his design. But though all things were carried secretly, without any noise, *Tamerlan* had intelligence of all these practises against his Person. At first he made light of it, or seem'd so to do, wisely concealing all the reports of the Rebellion of this *ambitious Fool*, that it might break out to the eyes of the World, and render *Calix* more guilty, and himself less blameable, by bearing Arms in his Uncles Dominions, whose displeasure he was loath to draw upon himself. It is very likely that he could have prevented this mischief in its beginning, but he had good cause to deal otherwise. His long abode at *Cachobach*, near a Months time, because

becauſe of his indiſpoſition, as was pretended, had a good reaſon.

In the mean while, the *Tartarians* Army, commanded by *Calibes*, hearing of the mighty preparations and intentions of the *Chineſes* to aſſault them, murmured becauſe they were idle, and let ſlip the opportunity of ſhewing their courages to their Enemy, and their new Prince. The Commanders endeavoured to pacifie and quiet the Souldiers martial diſpoſition, with news that came at every foot of ſome unexpected obſtacle that ſtaid *Tamerlan* from joyning with them. It was eaſie to imagine, that his quick and ſpeedy temper in executing his reſolutions, was ſtopt by the knowledge of *Calix*'s Conſpiracy; and that he delayed the time only, that he might have a favourable occaſion to puniſh him: Nevertheleſs, he was willing that *Calix* ſhould believe, that he was paſs'd beyond the Mountains, to aſſault the famous *Wall* defended by all the Armies of the *Chineſes*; for that purpoſe he gave an expreſs Command, that care ſhould be taken that none might forſake the Reer, to give notice where he was with his *Camp*.

This wiſe proceeding ſucceeded well; for *Calix* imagining that his Enemy was at a vaſt diſtance encountring with the *Chineſes*, though he was on this ſide of the Mountains, caſt off all diſſimulation, and with as much indiſcretion as he had hitherto ſhewn wiſdom in his ſecreſie, commanded all his Forces to march againſt the *Prince*, to ſurpriſe and intangle him. But all this while *Tamerlan* ſeem'd to be aſleep, and expected nothing elſe, that he might give a Check to the ambition of this *Fool*. He went forward with his Army a days journey towards *Calibes*, unto whom he had diſpatch'd a Meſſenger

Messenger with the news of this Rebellion. *Tamerlan* called together his Council, and Chief Officers of both Armies, and spoke to them in this manner.

Tamerlan's Speech to his Council of Officers.

I *Am perswaded, my Friends, that you will all advise me to set by the Enterprise against* China, *and endeavour the quenching of these Flames that are kindled in the Bowels of our Country, that I may preserve that Kingdom where you desire that I should Reign, and where all the faithful servants of my Lord and Uncle have received me with applause, and expressions of joy. I am in duty bound to help him to punish* Calix *for his Rebellion and Insolency: He alone hath resisted the Emperours intentions, and refus'd to acknowledge me, and yield to my Promotion to the Empire of* Tartary: *But we must also think at the same time of resisting our Forreign Enemy, whose vast Armies are as likely to assault us, as to oppose our attempts.*

It is very likely that the Chineses *are made the bolder by* Calix's *Rebellion, with whom it is probable they hold Correspondency, and to whom they may have promis'd assistance and protection, with a design to divert our Forces, which they saw were all coming against their Country, to re-take what they had usurped upon us. Therefore, my Friends, I think it best, that whiles I shall go back to chastise the ambitious Rebel,* Calibes *should stay upon the Frontiers with five and twenty thousand of the* Parthians *Cavalry, and forty thousand of the Emperours, and with one hundred thousand Foot to hinder the* Chineses *from breaking into our Country. I shall leave at his Command all the provisions of Victuals and Arms which we have gathered for our Army, and put*

into some place of security our Artillery and warlike Engines. In the mean while, I will march back with the remainder of the Army against Calix, *and order* Samay *to meet me with fifty thousand Horse; and when I shall see convenient, I will stay to wait for the Emperours Commands.*

This Discourse of *Tamerlan* was well lik'd of by all the chief Officers of the *Council*, though some that had not understood this Rebellion were of a contrary judgment: They said, that it was a temerity to ingage in a War with the King of *China*, in such a time when a Civil Dissention breaks out like a Cancer that consumes the Entrails of the Kingdom, and disappoints all foreign designs; that it was wisdom to secure the Heart of a Country, before one attempts the Conquest of another. But these persons were not well acquainted with the Princes Secrets; for the long knowledge of the rebellious practices of *Calix*, had made him keep up an Army always ready to march at his first motion. They knew not that *Tamerlan* apparently displeas'd at this Rebellion, was not really angry to go into his new Empire with weapons in his hands, for a Cause that his Uncle judg'd to be just, because this would gain to him the affection of the Souldiers, and give him a new possession of, and Title to the Empire that had been given him, and because this tended to the security of his Dominions for the future; for by the punishment of this Rebel, others would ever be discouraged from making new attempts.

We must confess that *Tamerlan*'s wisdom appear'd as well by this separation of the *Tartarian* Army, as by obliging *Calibes* to stay upon the Borders,

Borders, though he knew very well that this *Lord* was desirous to follow him, to be an Eye-witness of the event of this Civil War, that he might govern himself according to the good or bad success.

The Prince of *Tanais*, who had an eye upon *Calix*, and without whose advice he never did any thing, commanded the *Van* of the *Parthians* Army that was left behind. Thus both Armies were divided. The King of *China* was a long while without understanding any thing of this inward Rebellion: He thought the whole Army of the *Parthians* and *Tartarians* had been at hand; for *Tamerlan* had taken great care to stop the passages, that no News could pass. This favour'd *Tamerlan*'s designs not a little.

The Army where his Person was, marched back with diligence, and great hopes of success. The *Van*, led by *Odmar*, staid upon the borders of those Provinces where *Calix* had his Agents, until the *Prince* had sent to acquaint the old *Emperour* with all things that had passed. But when the Messenger was return'd, he understood that the *Emperour* was desperately sick, and that the whole *Empire* was inclineable to Rebellion. This News made him leave his Infantry behind, and to draw with more haste nearer to the Enemy with all his Cavalry. His coming was to him unexpected.

Calix had been with his Army of one hundred thousand men before the great and proud City of *Cambalu*, the *Metropolis* of the Province of *Catay*. The Inhabitants had open'd their Gates, and received him with as much joy, as if he had been their lawful Soveraign. They were so blind and foolish, as to send some of their own Citizens,

with the Deputies which the Rebel had dispatch'd to the Court held then at *Quinsay*. They had Orders, in his name, to assure the *Emperour* of his obedience and fidelity, and with studied expressions to impose upon him, by colouring his Revolt with the hatred against the *Parthians*, and their solemn League which they had lately made never to own *Tamerlan* for their Prince. They beseeched his Majesty to substitute in his place *Calix*, that their glorious Empire might not be inslaved to a Stranger of *Zagatay*.

At this same time there was news secretly flying, that the Prince of *Parthia* was already upon the borders of *Catay*, and that he was followed by the best Troops of the Empire. *Calix* could never stifle this Rumour, to keep on his side such as had too unadvisedly ingaged themselves in this Quarrel, out of a perswasion that *Tamerlan* would not be able to return in eight Months from his Expedition into *China*, whatever success and happiness he met with. *Calix*, with all his subtle fetches, could not work upon their minds already possessed with the fear of the punishment which their Rebellion had deserved: They were as much surpris'd and affrighted, as are a company of Scholars when their Master finds them quarrelling, and in a disorder, contrary to their duty. At this time the *Tartarians* were Courting of *Calix* at *Cambalu*, where he received the Homages of the Provinces that yielded to him. But this unexpected coming of *Tamerlan* was a dreadful news that dasht all their joys; some of them were asham'd of their sudden and inconsiderate Rebellion, which so much the more deserved a punishment, because it was acted against their lawful Lord, and against the greatest

Captain

Captain of the World, whose Vertue was worthy to command not only the Empire of *Tartary*, but also of the whole World. The rumour of his march spread every where amongst the people; and as the Moon, which never continues two days the same, this report increas'd and decreas'd, according to the affections of the Authors and Entertainers of it. But this caus'd the most passionate persons for *Calix*'s Interest to grow cold, and alter their intentions. The Inhabitants also of this great City gather'd together in Companies, some of five hundred, others of a thousand, others of two thousand, to consult, but not able to come to any setled resolution, for they were afraid of *Tamerlan*'s just displeasure, having incens'd him by their baseness and infidelity; for they had been sworn unto him, and by the Emperours Command had acknowledged him for their *Lord*. They said amongst themselves, *that he was lawfully descended from so many Monarchs who had reigned over them very justly; therefore their troubled Consciences fancied him at their Gates, ready to punish them for having rashly open'd them to a Rebel, who had plotted against his lawful Prince.*

Whiles these people were thus justly troubled with several disquieting apprehensions, *Tamerlan* expecting the Forces that he had sent for out of his own Kingdom of *Zagatay*, drew nearer by degrees to the City of *Cambalu*. His Army had pass'd *Caindu*, and march'd strait to *Calalia*. The Inhabitants of *Cambalu* had been deceived with the deceitful promises of *Calix*; and as many persons do, they had flattered themselves with large expectations of prosperity, without thinking how deceitful the affairs of the World are, and how sub-

ject to change. When therefore they saw the Prince upon their borders, they were mightily perplex'd with fear and displeasure for their Rebellion. As soon as *Calix* understood it, he went out of the City, with a firm resolution to fight *Tamerlan* with all his Army. He gathered his men from all parts, intending to try the fortune of a Battel. At the same time he received ill news from the Court, that the Emperour was so far from being pleased with his undertaking, that he had commanded his Souldiers, in considerable numbers, to gather together out of all the Garrisons, and to march to help his Nephew, unto whom in his most desperate sickness, when he thought to have left the world, he had sent his Imperial Ring, giving out an express Command, that all his Subjects should obey him as his own Person.

This news, together with that of *Tamerlan*'s approach, caused him to hasten to hazard all in a Battel: For that intent, he took out of *Cambala* fifty thousand men, partly Inhabitants, and partly Garrison Souldiers, plac'd there by the Emperour. This Garrison was in number thirty thousand: *Calix* had won them by the means of their Officers and Governours, who were of his Party, and had consented to deliver up into his hands this great City.

When all his Souldiers were together in a Body, they amounted to fourscore thousand Horse, and one hundred thousand Foot. His design was so well ordered, that if the *Moscovites*, whom he had sollicited under-hand, had answer'd his expectations, and enter'd into the Province of *Zagatay* to stop the march of the *Parthians* Army, in whom *Tamerlan* had the greatest confidence, it is certain that

that *Calix* might have put this Prince to a *non-plus*, chiefly becauſe he had the City of *Cambalu* to aſſiſt and favour him. It is therefore very dangerous for ſuch as govern to anger great ones, or not to mind their behaviour. If their diſpleaſure be incouraged by their Credit and Intereſt in the Provinces, they are more inclineable to ſtir and cauſe diſturbances.

We muſt here acknowledge, that the Emperour of *Moſcovy* was a great Friend to *Tamerlan* in this occaſion, by refuſing to aſſiſt a rebellious Subject againſt his lawful Prince. He had in vain endeavoured to diſſwade him from his wicked purpoſe, and reduce him to obedience. *Odmar* much taken with this juſt proceeding, was wont to ſpeak of it often to *Tamerlan*, ſo that he was an uſeful Inſtrument to preſerve friendſhip between theſe two Princes.

As ſoon as the Succours of the *Parthians* were come to *Tamerlan*, he march'd with diligence againſt *Calix*. He underſtood, by the means of two thouſand Horſe whom he had ſent before, that the Enemy came to meet him in good order. This news caus'd him to detach two thouſand more to ſeiſe upon the paſſage of a River named *Brior*, as well to ſecure his Proviſions, as to ſtop there, and ſuffer the Rebels to think upon their fault, which either a little time would infallibly call to mind, or the want of food, unto which he hoped to reduce them, or at leaſt to put them in diſorder. In this particular, Rebellious Armies differ much from Royal Armies, where Order and Diſcipline joyn hand in hand, and preſerve Union and Plenty.

In this march of the Prince againſt *Calix*, he forgot not the Command of the Emperour his Uncle,

cle, to make a notable example of this Rebel, and of his Confederates, to secure by that means the peace of his Empire, and of his days.

This consideration made him act with caution, that he might not miscarry in any thing. He saw that his own Army did increase every day by the arrival of new Levies from all parts, whereas the Enemies Army wanted already Provisions, because they could scarce have any from *Cambalu*, a Wilderness lying between the City and the Camp, and certain Mountains at the end of the Wilderness, where a Subject of the *Grand Cham* commanded, named *Cangi*. This Lord had promis'd to let the Provisions pass when *Calix* was in his Territories, but as soon as he was at a distance, he refused it, and took all that came into his hands; he had a greater power to perform this, because *Tamerlan* had sent him four thousand Horse to guard him and his Country.

This grievous accident, which *Calix* never could foresee, caus'd him to resolve upon a Battel: But *Tamerlan* understanding his wants, and the cause of his speedy resolution, had seized all the Passes and Fords of the River of *Brior* for his own Army; it had fourteen miles behind it a fat and a plentiful Country, besides the Salt Lake, and the River of *Ostan*, which was beyond: so that he could stay till the Enemy did assault him; for this wise and experienced Prince judg'd it advantagious to him to suffer the Enemy to spend himself, and his Provisions by degrees.

The two Armies stood two Months looking upon one another: All this time was spent in light skirmishes. When *Calix* understood the intent of *Tamerlan*, he resolv'd to return back to *Cambalu*, where

where he knew that he ſhould have all things in abundance; and the rather, becauſe he underſtood that ſome practices were acting againſt him there. As ſoon as the Prince perceiv'd it, he paſs'd over the River with all his Army, which conſiſted of one hundred and fifty thouſand Horſe, and two hundred thouſand Foot. After that he had conſulted his chief Officers, he reſolved to try the fortune of a Battel.

This reſolution was grounded chiefly upon two reaſons; firſt, becauſe he was afraid that *Calix* would return, and ſpend the Winter at *Cambalu*, where he ſhould be forc'd to go and fight him. This would cauſe the total deſtruction of that famous City, for he doubted not of the Victory: ſecondly, becauſe if he did win that City by aſſault, he was afraid that his Army ſhould grow too rich and wealthy with the plunder, and by that means would be leſs fit for the great Actions, in the proſecution of which he intended further to imploy them. This reſolution that he was forc'd to take griev'd him; he was not willing to enter into the poſſeſſion of his Empire by Bloodſhed and Cruelty. This conſideration caus'd him once more to ſummon *Calix*, and adviſe him to lay down his Arms, with promiſes of pardon, and to receive him into his favour.

The unadviſed *Calix*, whoſe courage was not contemptible, ſlighted all theſe gracious offers; his ambition render'd him cruel to himſelf, and caus'd him to look upon all other conditions of life, under that of a Soveraign, as unworthy of him. He could not ſubmit, but choſe rather, though but for a day, as a Prince to govern, than to live many years as a Subject. He could not truſt nor relye totally

totally upon the promises of his Prince, with whose generosity and good nature he was never acquainted: He thought the destiny of men in his condition, condemns them either to a fatal Ruine, or raises them up to a Throne.

Tamerlan's Army went over to *Chincy*, marching seven Leagues: as soon as the Enemy understood it, they alter'd their design, and returned back, with an intention to venture a Battel. It is reported, that *Calix* turning himself then to some of his followers, told them, with his eyes lifted up to Heaven, *that in all his life-time he had never received a more pleasing news*: The Parthians, saith he, *have pass'd over the River, and are coming towards us: If therefore* Tamerlan, *who dallied with us before, will suffer us now to end our Quarrel by a Fight, my happiness is great, whatever be the event, it must needs procure me an immortal glory: If the advantage happen on my side, what Prince is there in all* Asia *that may contend with, or be compared to me, for I shall be Lord of all* Tartary *and* Zagatay, *for I fight against the Armies of these two Kingdoms which I have divided: but if I be overcome, the greatness of my undertaking will leave behind me a great deal of Reputation in the world, seeing that I have stopt with my Army, during two Months, between the Rivers of* Brior *and* Oftan *all the Armies of* Zagatay: *Therefore if we chance to lose the Victory, it will prove for our honour.* During this discourse, his Attendants took notice in his looks of a Noble Air, which made him esteem'd and admir'd of every one.

When the Armies drew near, the Scouts met, and those of *Tamerlan's* Army were driven back into their Camp, which accident vext *Odmar* that commanded then the *Van*. The Prince told him, that

at

at the approach of the Enemy he ought to have increas'd the numbers; he excus'd himself, in that he imagin'd that *Calix* would not be so bold as to advance three Leagues towards the Army at that instant.

The next day was spent in giving out Orders to every one: The Captains went about in the Ranks, exhorting their Souldiers to behave themselves well; and both Captains and Souldiers incouraged one another to fight valiantly, by declaring the Encounters where they had been already.

Calix was forty years of age, much respected because of the Nobility of his Blood, and the considerable Rank that he held in his Country. The Emperour esteem'd him so much for his experience in War, that before *Tamerlan* appeared in *Tartary*, he was always look'd upon as worthy of the Empire.

The Armies stood one against another, for eight hours in the morning, skirmishing sometimes according to the *Tartarian* manner, before the Battel: A great Plain, and even ground lay between them. *Odmar* commanded the *Van*, where were sixty thousand Foot, and forty thousand Horse, which he separated into four great Squadrons, causing one to go before the other to the Fight. *Tamerlan* marched on in the same Order, but his Squadrons were stronger. The *Infantry* of the *Van*, and of the *Main Body*, were on the right hand, and on the left. He had taken out of his Army, to make up the Reer, six thousand *Parthians*, and two thousand *Tartarians*, giving the Command to *Axalla* a *Genoese*; but, as I have said, had been brought up with him from his Infancy: He had by his affection for him, by his vertue, experience,

rience, and valour, deserved his Princes esteem and confidence. *Tamerlan* order'd him not to fight but in the extremity, and to have a care to gather together all that should be broken in the Army. *Axalla* performed this so exactly, that he did this day notable service to his Prince. He was no less esteem'd by the Men of War, though he professed a Religion contrary to theirs; for he was a *Christian*, and imitated by many whom he had sent for out of *Georgia*, and beyond the *Pontus Euxinus*; these accompanied him with their courages and persons in the Battel.

Calix on the other side was Eloquent, and naturally a great Speaker; he incourag'd therefore his Souldiers with the honour and liberty of their Nation, to play their parts like men, and follow his example. He had divided his Army into three Bodies, only he had placed his *Infantry* at the right hand, and his *Cavalry* at the left; he himself was in the middle Body, surrounded with his Foot, as with a Circle, according to our manner of fighting. *Odmar*, a crafty and experienced Commander, stopt when he saw the Enemy coming, and observed their motion; but when he perceived that their greatest Body was shaken at the onset of his first Squadron, he caused his two others, the one to charge at the right hand, and the other at the left: They were so furious and happy, as to put the three Bodies of *Calix*'s Army into a disorder, so that they were forc'd to reunite in one.

At that time *Tamerlan* came in, and cut in pieces all that stood before him, nothing was able to resist his fury: he made way through the thickest of his Enemies, some he put to flight, others he laid in heaps; the cries and lamentations of the

dying

dying were heard in every place; the diſorder and hurley-burley was generally all over the Field: here you might have ſeen weak Squadrons diſarming others more numerous; there you might have beheld Troops of Horſes taken by ſuch as were more greedy of prey than honour; every where *Tamerlan*'s Army ſeem'd to have gain'd the Victory, when fifteen thouſand freſh Troops, led by *Calix* himſelf, came into the Field, and gave a furious charge upon the Princes *Battalion*, and broke it all to pieces. This Reſerve proceeded from ſome that at the firſt onſet fled to the Carts and Carriages, where they had rallied, whiles *Tamerlan*'s men were purſuing the victory, and killing. When therefore this Body of Horſe appear'd firſt, *Tamerlan*'s Army being in diſorder, they had no great difficulty to overcome them: The Victory was almoſt loſt.

This oblig'd him to retreat in fighting, according to the manner of the *Parthians*: The Prince had been diſmounted, but reſcued at the ſame moment, which caus'd him to look to his *Reer*, which could not yet come up to him. His *Infantry* had open'd it ſelf when he gave the onſet: It had not yet been aſſaulted, but only upon the skirts in the ſeveral Encounters. At the ſame time therefore that *Calix* purſued ſo vigorouſly the Princes Army, that by a ſtout reſiſtance had leſſen'd the number of the Enemy, *Axalla*, who commanded the *Reſerve*, or the *Reer*, came up to the *Infantry* which had ſcarce been ingag'd in the fight. The Clouds of duſt hindered *Calix* from perceiving this Body that was in the *Reer*, and that was falling upon him and his men, who advanc'd in very good order, bearing all down before them. At that very inſtant

ſtant theſe words were often heard repeated, *Give back, give back, give back.* *Axalla* had commanded a thouſand, or twelve hundred of his Body, to advance, and free the Prince: They charg'd home to the Enemy, ſo bravely, that *Calix* began to conjecture what would become of his Empire, of his Glory, and ambitious deſigns, by what was then acted: The diſpleaſure made him penſive a little moment, but reſolution caus'd him to ſend a Party to ſtop the Enemies fury, while he rallied his ſcattered Troops. He gathered together about eleven thouſand, with them he thought to have beaten *Tamerlan*'s Reer: But he was not a little troubled, becauſe the duſt hinder'd him from diſtinguiſhing the Foot from the Horſe; he imagin'd therefore that all *Axalla*'s Party were Horſe. In this occaſion he ſhew'd his courage and reſolution with a ſetled countenance, by exhorting his men to play their parts, and purſue their good fortune which they had already; and aſſuring them, that the remainder of *Tamerlan*'s men before them were nothing, but ſuch as had already fled, who endeavoured to rally; and that with a ſtout onſet it was eaſie to hinder them. Whiles he was ſpeaking, his Party increas'd: But *Axalla* conſidering that his Maſter had put into his hands that day the fortune of two great Empires, was reſolved to anſwer his expectation, by hazarding his life for his intereſt and glory, with a reſolution of dying upon the place, or of carrying away the Victory, he call'd to ſuch as were neareſt to him to follow his example; therefore with an incredible fury he broke through the Squadron led by *Calix*. This Prince was wounded with a Lance in the mouth, when he had performed the duty of a Commander, and

common

common Souldier, and expreſs'd ſufficiently his undaunted courage. In the hurley-burley he was taken Priſoner by *Axalla* himſelf. It was immediately nois'd abroad all over the Field, together with the advantages that *Tamerlan* had obtain'd, for he himſelf had defeated a Body of Horſe, by charging them in the Flank. *Axalla* before had broken them, but they were rallied together again, and had not *Tamerlan* ſeaſonably come in, they might have ſnatch'd the Victory out of his hands. This bad news broke the hearts, as well as the Troops of the Enemy that fled immediately upon it.

In this Fight there died above fifty thouſand men on both ſides; ſo that *Tamerlan* purchas'd the Victory at a dear rate, and was forc'd to confeſs, that in all his life-time he never was more likely to be undone than at that time. He imbrac'd and extoll'd *Axalla* for his couragious behaviour and wiſe Conduct that day. This Noble Captain preſented *Calix* before him, wounded with a Lance in the Mouth, and with an Arrow in his Side. *Tamerlan* ask'd him ſome queſtions, but *Calix*'s pride and inſolency would make no anſwer, pretending that he could not well ſpeak. He was kept till the next day, the laſt of his life, for he was judg'd worthy to die by a Council of War. His Head was chopt off, and ſent as a Preſent to the Inhabitants of *Cambalu*. All the other Commanders were treated in the ſame manner: There was a neceſſity for this ſeverity, to hinder all Civil Broils from riſing again; it was therefore needful to cut off the Chieftains.

After the Fight, *Tamerlan*'s Army meeting with no reſiſtance, march'd into the Province of *Catay*, which

which is full of all kind of Fruits, Grass, Beasts, and Fowl, more than in any other part of *Tartaria*. The Prince gave a severe Command to all his Souldiers, not to offer to abuse the Inhabitants, whom he would deal with as with his best Subjects.

The Cities of *Cangi*, *Sochgi*, *Gonza*, *Tagin*, *Togara*, and *Congu*, that had revolted, staid not for a Summons to yield, but wisely sent their Deputies to *Tamerlan*, to implore his mercy.

This good Prince forgave them, requiring nothing from them, but that they should furnish his Army with Provisions, telling them, that for the future they should be better advised, than to be so easily perswaded with the empty promises of ambitious persons, who would endeavour to draw them from that obedience which they owe to their Lord and Master.

This kind and courteous dealing being divulg'd all over the Provinces, wrought a great change in the minds of those, who expecting no favour from *Tamerlan*'s hands, were yet resolved to venture all, and ruine themselves and their Country. The Citizens of *Cambalu* had taken this strange resolution, to sell their lives at a dear rate, if they were to lose them; for this City was full of those Mutineers, who knew themselves as guilty as their Commanders that had been punish'd already; expecting therefore no mercy for themselves, they thought it might mitigate their punishment, if they could but draw into it the rest of their Citizens.

But this kind and gracious dealing of their Prince put other thoughts into their Souls, and rais'd their hopes. Nevertheless, the Armies approach to the City, increas'd daily the fears and appre-

apprehensions of the people. *Tamerlan* had notice of all that was there acted from those that favour'd his Interest: They sent him word, that at last every one was resolved to obey the *Conquerour*, and perform his Commands; therefore he left his Army at *Gonza*, only thirty thousand men he order'd to march thither to fill up the ordinary Garrison. When they were enter'd, they put all things in a good posture, and caus'd every one to submit to the Princes pleasure without murmuring. He himself was received into the City two hours after his Garrison in a triumphing manner, for the Inhabitants laboured, in this occasion, to make him forget the wrong they had done him. He had only pardon'd the meaner sort of people, the rest he left to the will of the Emperour his Uncle, unto whom he had dispatch'd a Messenger, to inform him of the Victory, of *Calix*'s death, and of the imprisonment of some of the chief Commanders and Leaders of the Faction; and to desire to know what punishment he would have inflicted upon those of *Cambalu*, who had been the greatest Mutineers. By this kind and insinuating dealing, he purchas'd to himself in this great City the reputation of a merciful and gracious Prince. He gain'd also the love of every one by courting them, chiefly those who had been faithful to his Party.

After eight days stay in this place, he went away with a thousand prayers and praises, which were again reiterated a little after, when news came from the Emperour, that he would have Justice done upon the Authors of the Rebellion. This was perform'd in the *Chan*'s Name, and by

his Officers two hundred of the Inhabitants were executed, and their Heads were lifted up in the publick view, for an example to all such as should afterwards attempt to rebel. This cruelty of the *Great Cham*, condemn'd by the common people, caus'd them to extol the goodness of *Tamerlan*, who by this yielding to his Uncles will, laid a greater Obligation upon him, and nevertheless purchas'd to himself the universal esteem of the Country.

In the mean while, the Emperour began to rise from his sick Bed, which caus'd him to have an earnest desire to see the Prince, who delayed this Interview till he had been with his Army, where he intended to advise, whether it were not best to stay first, and expect what news he should receive from his Army upon the borders of *China*. Thus he went as far from *Cambalu* as he could, that he might not be thought to have any hand in the execution of the Citizens.

In this manner this dangerous and Civil War was ended, to the advantage of *Tamerlan*, whose diligence had been notable in the extinguishing of it: One may justly say, that he conquer'd this great Empire, for there was a dangerous and a general conspiracy and rising against him: His vigilancy disappointed all his Enemies. In such like cases, speedy and early appearances in the Field, are of the highest importance for a Princes Affairs, to incourage his own Party, to terrifie such as are wavering, and to prevent all false reports, with which the common people are usually cozen'd. His chief endeavour should be to perswade, and make it appear, that the Rebels

are

are not to be fear'd, and that he himſelf dreads them not; but this he can never do, unleſs he commands his own Army: By this means he will have a great advantage over the Rebels. It is not to be imagin'd, that a Revolt is to be ſtifled by weak Remonſtrances, for that perſwaſion ſavours of as much indiſcretion, as the Authors of the Rebellion have had craft to cauſe their injuſtice to be entertain'd under the notion of Equity: Therefore without delays, a Soveraign Prince muſt fall upon the Rebels, ſcatter and deſtroy them with the fear of a ſpeedy puniſhment. By no means let him be prevail'd upon to grant pardon to the Chieftains of the Rebellion.

Tamerlan dealt in this manner with *Calix*. He knew his deſigns a great while before he was in a capacity to put them in execution; therefore he provided a timely remedy, a powerful Army in the Province of *Zagatay*, to be ready to march at his firſt Command. In the mean while, he pretended to be buſie in his Expedition againſt *China*, that he might by that means better diſcover the chief of the Rebellion, and their wicked intentions; by this act of wiſdom he diſappointed *Calix*, who doubtleſs might have prevail'd upon a negligent and weak Prince given to his pleaſures: But *Tamerlan* had better qualities, he found the benefit of his cares and vigilancy; for before this he was not well ſetled in the Empire; but by this Victory he became ſuch an undoubted Succeſſor and Owner of it, that the death of the *Great Cham* could not cauſe any alteration or oppoſition of his Right. From hence it is eaſie to conclude, that as his kindneſs and moderation

were strong Chains to bind the hearts and souls of his good Subjects, his courage and severity knew how to punish the Rebels, and seditious persons, and bring them to obedience. As soon therefore as *Tamerlan* had overtaken his Army, *Odmar* who expected him, and caus'd them to march in good order, and slowly, received him with the Captains and Souldiers, with acclamations and expressions of joy, calling him in the *Tartarian* Language, *Most great and victorious Emperour.*

In the way he discours'd with his Captains concerning the Greatness and Beauty of the City of *Cambalu*, till he was come into the Tent prepar'd for him, where he remain'd alone with *Odmar*. He told him all that had been acted in that rebellious City; afterwards he desir'd his advice, whether he should visit the *Great Cham*, his Uncle, at that time or no. *Odmar* understood by his words, that he remembred what Honours he had received at *Quinsay* when he was there, and that he had a secret inclination to spend the Winter with the young Empress, and to go in the Spring into *China*.

But as he was an Enemy of Flattery, and loved his Prince entirely, as one of his most faithful and chief Officers, he spoke to him boldly in this manner; *Brave and Invincible Emperour, let all the world understand, I beseech you, that* Tamerlan *knows how to use his Victory, as well as to gain it. Do not you mind, that the Army which you have left upon the borders of* China *is busily imployed in fighting with the Enemy above six months; that the Chief Commander is a* Tartarian, *and one of the most considerable*

ſiderable of his Nation. Know you not that the Tartarians *and* Parthians *never think a Prince worthy to reign, if he cannot go with them to the War: And do you not conſider, that you have undertaken this War to increaſe the glory of him who hath made you his Succeſſor, and inlarge the bounds of his Empire, by re-taking the Lands which the* Chineſes *have uſurped: It concerns you therefore in gratitude to recover them with ſpeed. Conſider likewiſe, that your Glory and Reputation will appear to him greater at a diſtance, than near at hand, and more pleaſing, becauſe it will at a diſtance tend to inlarge his Empire, and render his Affairs more proſperous, whereas near at hand your Fame will but diminiſh his Reputation, and it may be cauſe a jealouſie in him. Princes ſometimes are ſubject to change, and by a ſudden repentance to ſtrive to ruine the perſon whom they have exalted too high. What need have you to undertake a journey ſo much deſtructive to your Honour and Glory? Is it not better to ſpend the Winter bravely in your Tent with your Army, than in the ſtately Palaces of* Quinſay, *in an Effeminate Court? where ſuch as are not afraid to ſlander, will not ſpare you, but will ask, where you have left your Army? whether you threaten the King of* China *only at a diſtance, who in your abſence may perhaps cut all your Troops in pieces? In ſuch a caſe, what a trouble will it be, to gather together your diſperſed Army; beſides, your example will have an influence upon the* Parthians, *they will deſire alſo to return to their Country, and the* Tartarians *to theirs; whereas if now you march immediately to the Frontiers, you may eaſily get a Victory, which otherwiſe you may loſe. No doubt but the King of* China *believes that you*

are much ingag'd in your own Country with your hands full, that your Army is daily weaken'd by the Rebels, who had almoſt ſnatch'd the Empire from you. He believes your deſigns are diſappointed, conſidering the weakneſs of the Army commanded by Calibes; *their behaviour cauſeth him to conceive, that they are ſent thither rather to ſecure* Tartary, *than to aſſault* China. *It may be he hath heard ſome perſons tell him that which many of your own people ſuſpect, but I dare not affirm it as true, becauſe it is not lawful for me to enquire into the wiſe counſels of Princes; that the cauſe wherefore you have left* Calibes *the Chief of the* Tartars *upon the Borders, was only to ſecure his perſon, and to remove the cauſe of your fears, rather than out of any deſire to proceed on in the Conqueſts which you pretended to make. Loſt not therefore, mighty Prince, ſuch a favourable opportunity to ſucceed, which God offers to you; opportunity is bald, catch hold of her whiles you may: But if I have offended your Majeſty with the freedom of my diſcourſe, uſe me according to your pleaſure, I am your Slave, and here is my Head.*

This Speech of *Odmar* made *Tamerlan* ſad; he chang'd countenance often, but *Odmar* nevertheleſs continued on, being ſo much the more animated by his zeal and affection for his Perſon and Glory. He repeated to him again the ſame diſcourſe, kiſſing the Hem of his Garment, as they uſe to do to the Emperours. The Prince, with his eyes fix'd upon him, told him, that this was the cauſe of his penſiveneſs, he was overcome with his affection and faithfulneſs, and was not in a power to reward him according to his deſervings; that in this particular he had found, more

more than in any other thing, a ſign of his Fathers wiſdom, in that he had choſen *Odmar* to be near him, and aſſiſt him with his wiſe Counſels: That neceſſity, that made him caſt away all thoughts of reſt, taught him, that *Soveraign Princes* are like their *Creator* in this, that his Glory hath no limits, and conſiſts in action; that though he had flatter'd himſelf with the thoughts of reſting a while from his former labours, he now ſaw himſelf forc'd, unleſs he would renounce the new Laurels that waited for him, to prefer all the inconveniencies and troubles of the Deſarts of *Cipribit*, to the pleaſures and delights of *Quinſay*; that he was nevertheleſs reſolv'd to quit his firſt intentions. *Albacem* the *Arabian* Hiſtorian declares, that he hath often heard *Tamerlan* confeſs, that at this inſtant *Odmar* ſeem'd not to ſpeak to him as a mortal Man, but as a Meſſenger of God, whom he had ſent, to divert from him a miſchief that would have perhaps fallen upon him, and to give him an opportunity to increaſe his Glory.

In the mean while, the news of the Princes going to viſit the Emperour his Uncle ſpread every where, to the great ſatisfaction of many, who imagin'd that they ſhould alſo go and viſit their Parents and Country. But the next day he commanded the General Muſters of the whole Army, and ſpoke to his Souldiers in this manner.

Tamerlan's Speech to his Army.

WE had sometimes since an intent, brave Souldiers, to go and assault the King of China, *to oblige him to restore what he hath taken from the* Tartarians, *and recover the Lands beyond the Mountains which he hath usurped upon us, to the great shame of our Nation, whose Glory we purpos'd to restore; but to our grief we have been hindered by the Jawcineſs of* Calix, *who forced us to return back to punish his insolency. With the assistance of your Arms, and Invincible Courages, we have quenched the flames of the Rebellion that he had kindled with his blood, and with that of his Companions; I could have wish'd that this Victory had been rather upon Strangers, and a Foreign Nation, than upon our own unfaithful and rebellious subjects. In such a case I had been as joyful, as when at my first appearance in Arms with you, we overcame the proud* Muscovites: *I must confess I am more oblig'd to you for this, than for that, because your courages and valour appeared more visibly in this Civil War; for you were to encounter with some as brave as your selves, you were to encounter with* Tartarians, *who had forgot what they were, their Allegiance to their Prince. I cannot call to mind this mournful passage without tears, I could willingly bury in Oblivion this unhappy Victory, though I have gain'd by it much honour; I mind you of it at present, only to make you understand, that I can never forget your faithfulness and services, expressed sufficiently in this occasion. But we must not stop here, we must turn our Arms next against those that think that we are lost for ever; whereas we are victorious,*

we

we muſt go to our Companions that wait for us, who have delayed the execution of their deſigns till they hear of our ſucceſſes, and victory; we muſt go and ſpend the Winter with them. All our Ammunitions are there, doubtleſs the ſleeping Enemy expects us not in this ſeaſon of the year; they reſt with confidence upon the weakneſs of our Troops, whoſe intent they imagine is only to defend themſelves, as not in a capacity to aſſault them. You ſhall have double Pay to buy Cloaths, and arm your ſelves againſt the Cold; and I hope that with theſe new Garments we ſhall purchaſe to our ſelves new honour and glory.

As ſoon as his Diſcourſe was ended, the Souldiers cryed out with a loud voice, *One God in Heaven, and one Emperour upon Earth.* At the ſame time they bowed their Heads to him, to expreſs their reverence; and declared, that they would perform whatſoever the Prince ſhould command them. After this, every one went ſtrait to his Tent. The Army abode in the ſame place eight days without ſtirring, only *Zamay* was ſent with five and twenty thouſand Horſe, and fifty thouſand Foot to *Zagatay*, to ſecure that Kingdom. He ſent alſo an Expreſs to the Emperour his Uncle, to inform him of all his Reſolutions, and to intreat him in the Spring to ſend him fifty thouſand men, or thereabouts, to recruit his Army, with Money to pay his Souldiers, and Ammunition of War, with proviſions for the Belly.

Thus when he had given all neceſſary Orders, and caus'd publick Prayers to be made, according to Cuſtom, he commanded the Army to march towards the Mountains.

CHAP.

CHAP. IV.

Tamerlan's Expedition againſt the King of China.

THE Provinces of *Leaotum* and of *Pekin*, which the *Chineſes* had taken from the *Tartarians*, were the Cauſes of that anger and diſpleaſure which they could not diſſemble. They found themſelves by this means, and by a prodigious Wall of a vaſt length, built in the paſſage of the Mountains, deprived of the benefit of that Prey which they were wont to make in that Kingdom by their frequent Inroads. They always brought back Herds of Cattel, with which *China* abounds above all other places, becauſe of its good temperature, being neither too cold nor too hot. This Conſideration, together with that of their honour, engag'd in the recovery of the Provinces which the Emperour of the *Tartarians* eſteemed and valued at a high rate, obliged *Tamerlan* to proſecute this Enterpriſe, to pleaſe his Uncle and new Subjects, and ſatisfie his own Paſſion.

The Army march'd ſoftly to avoid weariſomneſs, and in thirty Days got as far as *Cipribit*, where news came to them of *Calibes*, who was in his way to meet the Prince that entertain'd him very kindly. He told him of all his happy Succeſſes, and then, taking him aſide, he diſcover'd to him his deſign, and *Calibes* gave him an account of all that he had done againſt the Enemy.

The next day the Prince took Horſe, and rid as far as *Pazanfu*, where *Calibes* Army was quarter'd: They

They had often encounter'd with the *Chineſes* in Skirmiſhes, and ſmall Parties, and by the experience they had got, they judg'd themſelves better Souldiers than their Enemies in Courage and Skill. He cauſed them all to appear upon the *Parade*, going from one Rank to another he took notice of every Souldiers Countenance and Behaviour; he cauſed them to muſter next and receive their Pay; they return'd him Thanks, Acclamations, and Wiſhes for his health. When *Calibes* left his Army to go and meet *Tamerlan*, he had left the chief Command with the Prince of *Tanais*, General of the *Parthians*, who thought himſelf obliged by this opportunity to give ſome Teſtimony of his Zeal and Courage. He went out with a ſmall party, and met with four thouſand Horſe, commanded by the Kings Brother of *China*. He drew them cunningly to the Fight, and charg'd them ſo vigorouſly and ſucceſsfully, that he broke their Order and put them to flight. The Night favour'd their Retreat; they left behind five or ſix hundred dead to pay for their Companions, and witneſs the Victory and Courage of the Prince of *Tanais*, who return'd from this Encounter with many Horſes and other Spoils taken from theſe *Barbarians*. *Tamerlan* receiv'd him kindly, and careſs'd him in that obliging manner that his late generous Action had deſerved, and many others, for he ſcarce ſuffered them to breathe. He was the Son of one of *Tamerlan's* Siſters. His noble Qualities, as well as his Birth, gain'd him the Love and Reſpects of all men: He was yet but young, but he had already done great Services to his Prince, chiefly in that famous Battel againſt the

the *Moscovites*, where he commanded the Reer, for he was a good and experienced Commander. The Prince of *Tanais*, as we have represented him, out of an earnest desire of Glory, let slip no occasion to manifest his Courage and Skill in Arms: As he was nearest to the Enemy, he had an opportunity to discover in what places the Wall that stopt the *Tartarians* Inroads might be assaulted. He had sent some Spies into *China* by secret and by-ways in the Mountains that are at the passage: From them he understood all that happened there; but his prudence had succeeded chiefly in winning, by his insinuations, one of the greatest Lords of the Mountains, named, *The Lord of* Vauchefu. This Lord was displeas'd with the passages of the *Chineses* and *Tartarians* over his Ground, or rather he had been won with the picture that the Prince of *Tanais* had given him of *Tamerlan*, and of his obliging disposition. This caus'd him to change his Master, and make an agreement with the *Tartars*. He went and discovered his mind to him who had first spoken to him of it, telling him, that he was ready to serve the Emperour, and assist his Army against the *Chineses*. The Prince of *Tanais*, having kept this secret from *Calibes*, discover'd it first to *Tamerlan*, who with great joy sent for this Lord to speak with him. He was mightily pleas'd with this invitation, and appointed a day for this honourable Enterview. *Tamerlan*, without moving his Army, went to visit the Quarters of the Prince of *Tanais*, near the River of *Lanquenne*; at the place appointed. The Lord of *Vauchefeu* came to him thither to pay him his respects, to offer him his Ser-

Services, with proteſtations of his faithfulneſs to his intereſt. The Prince, by his Interpreters, told him, that he would protect him againſt all his Enemies, and that he would give him ſuch Teſtimonies of his Love, that he ſhould never have cauſe to repent his kind offer; after this *Vaucheſu* diſcover'd to him a ſecret paſſage that he knew, and leads into *China*, by which it was eaſie to go in and ſurpriſe the Souldiers that were to guard the Wall. That which troubled the Prince moſt, was that *Calibes*, an old and tryed Captain, had repreſented this paſſage, after a diligent ſearch, difficult to be won, and that it was kept with fifty thouſand of the beſt Souldiers of *China*; the King was there in perſon, and always on horſeback, to oblige every one to be diligent and ready, and that the Forces he had there were ſufficient to guard the Wall againſt all the World, if it ſhould offer to be aſſaulted. The Prince gain'd this Lord by his kindneſs and gifts, which were the richeſt Furs of *Tartary*, many beautiful Horſes, and all the rareſt things that he had; with theſe he purchas'd his Affections, and oblig'd him to diſcover his mind in theſe terms. *Know for certain, mighty Prince, that you will but trifle away the time, if you believe it poſſible by force of Arms alone to force and win the Wall which the* Chineſes *have built to hinder the Inroads of your Subjects; let your Courages be never ſo great; let them be heightened by your example, and the remembrance of your former Victories, and of the people that you have overcome; let them be never ſo obedient to your orders, which have obliged them to contemn the greateſt dangers, and death it ſelf: In a word, all the skill of*

theſe

theſe worthy men, whom you alone are worthy to command; all theſe advantages will not prevail againſt the Wall of the Chineſes, *which is guarded by fifty thouſand men of the beſt Souldiers, and which at the leaſt notice ſhall be aſſiſted by fifty thouſand more, commanded by* Xianxi; *and when you ſhall be engag'd in fight with them, weary and tyred out, the King himſelf will come with two hundred thouſand Horſe, and two hundred thouſand Foot to aſſault you. Suppoſe you ſhould beat him alſo, this cannot be without much Blood-ſhed on your ſide, and then it will not advantage you much. But to ſhew you, great Prince, that I am wholly yours, and that the Civilities and Reſpects of your People have won my heart, I will diſcover to you a way for fifty thouſand men whom I will lead into* China *my ſelf. They ſhall fall upon thoſe that guard the Wall before they are aware. In the mean whiles you ſhall with your Army aſſault a place that I will appoint, that your Souldiers may become Maſters of a Mountain over againſt the Enemy, which will gall them, for when the* Chineſes *ſhall ſee that they are aſſaulted behind and before, they will no longer guard the Wall, but will ſuffer you to enter and aſſiſt thoſe that I ſhall lead in; and for your ſecurity, and my fidelity which I promiſe, I will give you my only Son in hoſtage, together with two young Daughters, and my Wife; and for my Brother, I am perſwaded he will follow my directions, and ſerve you every where as affectionately as my ſelf.*

When this Lord had ended his diſcourſe, the Prince was wonderfully ſatisfied, and began to hope that his deſign would take effect, but he deſired that the buſineſs ſhould be managed ſo ſecretly, that he ſuffered not the Prince of *Tanais* to know by what means the Lord of *Vauchefen* would

would give an entry into *China* to his men; none was admitted to his Conference but only an Interpreter.

This Lord went away very well contented with his gifts, and *Tamerlan's* kindneſs and reſpects to him. The Prince of *Tanais* had orders to conduct and guard him with all poſſible honour and civility. *Tamerlan* likewiſe return'd to his head Quarters. The next day he diſcover'd all the Plot to *Odmar*, but before he would venture upon the Execution, he deſired to underſtand from *Calibes* what he had learned concerning the intentions and preparations of the *Chineſes*; in obedience to his Command he ſpoke to him in this manner. *Worthy Prince, I am ready to put in execution, without examining, all your Commands, as your moſt obedient ſlave; if therefore you deſire from me to know what I have underſtood concerning the preſent State of* China, *having had ſufficient time to learn, during ſix Months that I commanded your Armies upon the Borders, to defend them againſt the Inroads of the Enemies, I muſt tell you, that the King of* China, *that reigns now, is a Prince of a great reputation, gain'd by his inlarging the limits of his Empire, more than any of his Predeceſſors before him; He is proud and inſolent, for he names himſelf* The Lord of the World, *but all his ſtrength conſiſts in the defence and guarding of this famous Wall which ſtops us here. I confeſs 'tis great, and is as I judge guarded by fifty or threeſcore thouſand men in Garriſon along theſe Mountains. They are the beſt Souldiers of the Kingdom; ſo that I judge it not poſſible to force away through, without endangering your whole Army; I have heard that about the Lake of* Hogeen *there is an eaſie*

way

way to go into that Kingdom, but we must march seven or eight days to it, and go through strait passages long and tedious for so numerous an Army as yours is; so that the King of China *would have time to provide for his defence. He thinks at present that none oppose him but I alone; and that I am here but only to defend the Country, by your orders; for my part I think that it is the best for you to direct your course that way; it is doubtless the most secure for the convenience of Provisions, the strength of War, and of an Army, without which there is no marching to a Fight with Courage: This, noble Prince, is my judgment of that you desire to know of me, I cannot discourse of the Country till we enter into it.*

The Prince, who knew more, listened with attention, and discovered nothing to him; nor any body else about him, of that which he had discoursed with the Lord of *Vaucheſu*. When every one had spoken his mind, he answer'd, That the great God whose Glory he maintain'd against such wicked Idolaters, would assist his good intentions, strengthen the Courages of his Souldiers, and would facilitate that which they look'd upon to be difficult or impossible. In this manner the Prince discover'd his designs, and the strength of his Army, which consisted more in cunning than in courage, more in the Foxes Taile than in the Lions Skin.

Thus the Emperour craftily concealed the assured means that he had to open a passage to his Enemies, that being ignorant of the facility to overcome them, they might ascribe the good success to his conduct alone; and by that means that his Reputation might be more increas'd, and his Wis-

Wisdom, Skill and Courage more esteem'd. But before he attempted this great design he gave rich presents to the Kings, Princes, and Lords that were there with him, to win them; and appointed next the Rendezvous of his Army.

Assoon as it was together in one Body, he drew out fifty thousand men of his best Troops, making the Prince of *Tanais* their Captain, and gave him for Assistant *Axalla*, the *Genoese*, an experienced Commander, faithful and courageous for his interest, he desired the Prince to act nothing without his advice, and to believe him in every thing.

At the Day of the departure, the Lord of *Vaucheſis* came with his Brother to meet the Emperour; they assur'd him that the success would answer his expectation; for they had been to visit the way which was to be forc'd, and that led into the Kingdom of *China*; they had found it as unprovided as they expected. The Prince, after a short Conference upon the place, resolved to march in person with all his Army and draw near to this famous Wall over against *Quaquifou*, whiles the fifty thousand cholen men, commanded by the Prince of *Tanais* and *Axalla*, should gain the passage into the Country in that order that he had prescribed to them; which was, that *Axalla* should lead twenty thousand men in the *Van*, and the Prince of *Tanais* should follow in the Reer with thirty thousand, and that each Party should have with them one of the Lords of *China* to guide them, that the Enterprise might be the easier. After this, they left the Prince and march'd ten Leagues to the passage, which they

took without resistance; a little while they stopt there to rest themselves, and then went on ten Leagues farther, to the place where the *Chineses* were to guard the Wall. They never dream'd of any such surprise, but minded only those that were commanded by *Tamerlan*; they hop'd well that the great advantages which they had would enable them to repell all the assaults of *Tamerlan's* Army. They found themselves deceived and at a loss, for no sooner did the Prince's Army draw near to their Walls, but they saw at the same time *Axalla* coming to them by another way, with twenty thousand men, seconded by the Prince of *Tanais* with another Body. They went directly to assault them, but the *Chineses* in that urgent occasion, divided their Army, and unfurnished the Wall, which gave an opportunity to *Odmar* to win it with his Infantry which he commanded that day; he made such speed, that the *Chineses* found themselves on a sudden encompassed about with two Armies, when *Axalla* begun the onset. The Battel was Bloody, the *Chineses* were totally routed by this noble Christian, before the Prince of *Tanais* with his Troops could overtake them, so weak was the Enemies resistance. This Victory enrich'd all the Souldiers of *Tamerlan's* Army, for they found much Gold about them, upon their Clothes, Arms, and Horses; one of the King of *China's* Kinsmen, who was stiled King, was taken Prisoner, with the chief Commanders that were saved from the furious slaughter which was made amongst them.

The sadness of this overthrow spread every where, and soon came to the Ears of the King of

of *China*, who was then at *Quanton*. It filled all his Court with Sorrow, Displeasure and Fear; every one wept for his Friend, or his Relation; but this Prince, who had always till then thought himself the happiest of all men, was inwardly surpris'd, without discovering himself to any of his Court, as a man that commanded himself and his passions; he gave orders to gather his Souldiers from all Parts, and sent for his Priests that kept his holy things, commanding them, as their Lord, in a passionate manner, to offer Sacrifices for him to the Gods, and chiefly to the Sun, the greatest of the Gods, whom they think to be immortal, impassible, the Cause and Author of their Beings, that appears to men only for their benefit; he sent likewise his orders round about the Neighbouring Provinces of his Empire, to call together all that were able to bear Arms, appointing them their Rendezvous at *Pekin*: He imagined that *Tamerlan* would direct his course that way, for it was the next City to his Camp; and the great Lord of *China*, called the *Xianxi*, fail'd not to be ready with his fifty thousand Men to strengthen such as were to guard the Wall. He hasted to oppose *Tamerlan* in his March into the Country, and as his Men were all Horse, well acquainted with the By-ways and narrow Passages, they were a continual plague to *Tamerlan*'s Army. This wise Prince, to secure his retreat, caus'd the Wall, and all the Forts that were there builded to be demolished, that the passages might be open, for the Garrisons they had all submitted themselves to the Conquerour after the Victory. He treated the people of the Mountains so lovingly, that

he caus'd them almoſt to forget that they were under a new Lord.

He rewarded well the Lord *Vaucheſu*, by giving a little County wherein were ſeven good Towns, as *Archii*, *Tmulii*, *Faliſquiem*, *Fulii*, *Cohenſin*, *Quialii*, *Pulii* and *Quiamlu*, all which were adjoining to this Lords former Territories; ſo that the Inhabitants were ſo much the more willing to obey him. He made him alſo Governour of the Province next to that of the *Xianxi*, and declared to him, by his liberality, that he was a Prince of his word; his Brother he intended afterwards to gratifie.

This kind dealing of *Tamerlan* was very advantageous to him, in making way for his ſucceeding Conqueſts; for he that will ſubdue Kingdoms and Lands with eaſe, muſt firſt conquer the hearts of the Inhabitants. The *Chineſes* are great admirers of thoſe vertues that are not practiſed by them, as of Love, Affability, Kindneſs and Mercy, which *Tamerlan*'s Souldiers were ordered to expreſs to them, and which is contrary to that cruel dealing with which they uſe to treat their Enemies that fall into their hands; this Cuſtom they borrow from the *Indians* their Neighbours.

When therefore they ſaw that this Prince handled them in a manner contrary to theirs, and that he expreſſed ſo much affection for them, they began to admire and honour him.

After the deſtruction of the Forts, *Tamerlan* took advice which way he ſhould march with his Army: He had heard that the King of *China* had furniſhed his ſtrong places, and that with as many Men as he could gather together he was in his way to meet and fight him. This news caus'd him to be

be not well resolved what course to take; first whether he should assault a Town in sight of so powerful an Army, or whether he should leave behind him places unconquer'd, which might cut off all his Provisions, and march directly to fight the King of *China*'s numerous Army. In this irresolution he desired to know his Officers minds; He called them together, and propos'd to them the business, which could not be quickly resolved, because of the diversity of opinions; but at last this advice prevailed above the rest, that no Town was to be left behind; that they were to make speed and take it before the Battel, that the Army might draw from thence Comfort, Assistance and Provisions, and that in case the Enemy would be so bold as to offer to relieve it, that then they would hazard a Battel; for this is the ordinary practice of a Conquerour and Assailant, to venture a fight with the Enemy, as it is the wisdom of the assaulted to decline it, and never to yield to it but in necessity; for by delays and light skirmishes, and without engaging in a whole Body, the Conquerour and Assailant is weaken'd and tyred out; and by this means Fortune is oftentimes forc'd to declare for him, and side with the assaulted.

The King of *China* ought in reason to have taken this course, if he had been well advised, but his ill fortune suffered him not, as we shall see by the following Relation.

This design to march forward being resolved upon in a Council of War, the Army went streight to *Pekin* to lay siege to it. This is a great, rich, and populous Town, well walled, and adorned

with many stately Structures. *Tamerlan* thought that the King of *China* would rather venture a Battel than lose this City out of his hands. He flatter'd himself with the hopes of winning it, and the victory at once; for the wonderful riches that were in it encouraged the greedy Souldiers to venture their lives boldly, chiefly the *Tartarians*, who are unsatiable for Prey and Plunder.

Odmar was order'd to march forward with fourteen thousand Horse to surround it, and hinder the importation of Provisions, that they might be useful to their own Army.

Axalla was appointed to follow him with all the Infantry, amounting to one hundred and fifty thousand Men, which he commanded as chief Collonel. This Office, given to him as a reward of his former services, caus'd him to be look'd upon both in the Army and in the Court. *Tamerlan* followed next with all his Horse, and with his Engines, his Artillery and Ammunitions.

Odmar went the first day twenty Leagues; so that when he came to the Walls of *Pekin*, the Citizens expected their King before the *Tartarians*. He took into his custody all the Beasts thereabouts, and seated himself in a convenient place, to wait for the coming of the whole Army, leaving the City between himself and them.

In the mean while, to affright the Enemy and learn news, he sent many Parties abroad; and about three or four days after the Infantry, led by *Axalla*, came to him: They sent then their Summons into the Town, to command them to yield; threatning, That the Citizens should otherwise suffer all the Calamities that usually happen in cases of resistance,

resistance, when they are overcome. They returned this answer, *That they would live and dye faithful Subjects to their Prince.* This strong resolution proceeded from a new Colony that the *Chinoses* had setled there of their own people, after they had driven away the ancient Inhabitants, who forty years before had been conquered by the Father of the *Cham* of *Tartary*, and were his Subjects; so that in the City there was no remembrance of the *Tartarian* Empire, but in the Country round about they had a love for their old Masters; for the Deputies of the little Towns came to submit themselves to *Tamerlan.* This caus'd his Army to be full of all manner of Provisions, and in such plenty, that in the Province of *Catay* they could not have more; this gave him great hopes and assurance of the success of his Enterprise; for without doubt the want of Provisions and Forrage is the ruine of the greatest Armies, and that which disappoints their most likely designs.

Thus the large and proud City of *Pekin* was regularly besieged, and our Infantry commanded to draw near the Walls round about within a Musquet shot. This dreadful sight of so many Enemies affrighted neither the Citizens nor the Garrison: *Tamerlan* left nothing unattempted to reduce them, and they used their utmost endeavour to defend themselves, as much as could be expected from brave and resolute men.

In the mean while *Axalla* went to view a Suburb encompassed about with a Wall about half a League round; when he had seen it, he wisely imagin'd that the keeping of it would not be easie for

the Inhabitants, who would hazard too much in defending it; he resolved therefore to assault it in the Night, when he had first told the Prince: All his men were ready at the first Watch, with their Ladders and needful Weapons: When the time was come, the Assault was made in several places, and the *Tartars* were beaten of; but at last *Axalla* enter'd the Suburbs, and cut in pieces all that were found in Arms, about eight thousand men; many of his Souldiers were killed, before the Walls, in the place where they expected them most likely to enter, but in that which they won scarce any body was killed on their side. The Plunder was rich, and given to the Souldiers. This loss, together with the Courages of our men, terrified the Inhabitants of the City, and surprised them strangely; so that then they began to despair of their safety, of which they doubted not before. They found themselves disappointed in their expectation of the coming of their Prince, who had promis'd to be with them in fifteen days, which were expired. They saw this dreadful Army gaining every day Ground upon them, and in a Post that commanded their City, and from whence with the Artillery they intended and were preparing to batter it. These considerations sunk deep into many timerous Souls of the chief of the Town, who desired more to gain the favour of the Conquerour, by yielding in time, than to deserve his displeasure by a long, a fruitless, and too obstinate a resistance. But the Governour, a great Lord of the Country, well respected by his Prince, assur'd them that the King was at hand, that he would not fail to relieve

lieve and ſuccour them in due time; that they were not yet in any great danger; that the City was yet theirs; that the loſs of one of its Suburbs was their advantage rather than a loſs, becauſe the keeping of it was difficult and dangerous; that now all their Forces were together to defend themſelves, and beat off the Enemy; that for his part he was fully reſolved to hazard his Eſtate and Life, and give his Prince all the ſigns that he could deſire of his Courage and faithfulneſs.

This diſcourſe coming from ſuch a noble and worthy perſon, who acted himſelf what he required from them, made a great impreſſion upon the minds of the people, and obliged them all to return to defend their Walls, with a reſolution to bury themſelves in the ruines of their City, rather than to yield baſely.

Pekin is a large Town, of a difficult acceſs, ſcituate in a plain, ſurrounded with Mountains at a conſiderable diſtance: There is only a Hill on the North-ſide which is nigh the Walls; a River runs at the Foot of this Hill, and near to it are the Suburbs that were ſtorm'd; ſo that on that ſide it was not eaſie to relieve the City, or put into it any ſuccours, becauſe the *Tartarian* Army commanded all the paſſages of the Mountains, which were of old the Borders of *China*, when *Pekin* belong'd to *Tartary*, and ſerv'd as a Bridle to ſtop the Inroads of the *Chineſes*. They had no other way to ſuccour the Town but along the River, over which the *Tartars* had built many Bridges, for the conveniency of their Army, that kept the paſſages of the Mountains; ſo that it

was

was impossible for the *Chineses* to relieve the Town, without the hazard of a Battel, which *Tamerlan* desired, and which should be the aim of all Conquerours in his Power and Condition. In this posture, the Army being passed before the City, *Odmar*, *Calibes* and the Prince of *Tanais*, were often sent out with Parties into the Country, to learn and understand something of the Enemy, and to cause the Cavalry to subsist the better, and keep the Provisions in the Camp for a greater necessity: Besides, the Souldiers were commanded to provide themselves before-hand with great stores of Victuals, that they might be better able to subsist, and not be obliged to raise the siege for any want, in case the Enemy did offer to beset them. This caus'd them to plunder several small Towns that would not bring them in Provisions; so that though the *Tartarian* Army was numerous they had plenty of all things.

In the mean while the *Chineses* were more in number and stronger, advancing towards us by little and little. *Tamerlan* intended to meet them himself with his Cavalry, and to leave the greatest part of his Infantry before the City, to continue the siege, which he prosecuted vigorously; but the Inhabitants resisted and fought with Courage. But to trie once more to win the Walls, he commanded to plant against it all his Engines of War, and to make a breach, that his Souldiers might come to a handy-fight, and assault the City with more ease. This proceeding waken'd the resolutions of the besieged, and terrified them wonderfully; chiefly a Mount which was raised upon some ruines about a Bow-shot from the Walls,

Walls, upon an high place: From thence the *Tartars* saw and discover'd the Guards within, and shot into the City, so that by day none dar'd appear upon the Walls. This inconveniency oblig'd them to watch and work more carefully in their own preservation. For that purpose they began to retrench themselves, to secure their Bodies by a Wall that was to be two and twenty Foot high, as many broad, and fifty Foot in length: As soon as the Besiegers perceived it, they thought it not convenient to stay till this work should be finished, but rather to try Fortune, and endeavour by an assault to win the Walls.

In prosecution of this design and resolution, the Prince sent for *Axalla* into his own Quarters, because it concern'd him most, in regard of his Office, and because during this siege he had been most active, he told him his intentions, desiring him to prepare himself and his men for the next morning. As soon as *Axalla* had drawn out his Souldiers, he assaulted the Wall, which was stoutly defended by the besieged; but at last this Captains Valour, assisted by twenty thousand of his Men, took it by force, and fortified himself there. He could scarce keep back his Souldiers in their heat and fury from breaking in further, according to the commands of *Tamerlan*, which he was perswaded to give, for two reasons: First, because he did not desire that the City should be won by assault, for it was rich and full of all good things; he was therefore afraid that the Enemies Army should come at that Instant when his Souldiers were busie in plundering the houses, which would have caused their utter overthrow; for rich Souldiers,

diers, who have much to lose, can never fight well: Secondly he stopt his men from taking the City by assault, because he intended to make of it a Magazine to furnish his Army, and carry on his designs with greater security.

The loss of the Wall abated not the Courages of the besieged; they defended themselves as obstinately and bravely as before, in hopes of receiving speedily some succours from their King, who was near at hand as they were rightly inform'd. But in their greatest expectations, the accident of a shot cast from one of the Engines, which struck down a piece of Wood and wounded the Governour dangerously, caus'd them to lose their Courages. This worthy person, so affectionate to his Prince and Country, died of this Wound a few hours after, leaving his Souldiers without heart or resolution; for this brave Commander, by his example and perswasions, obliged them to hold out so long. This unexpected accident forc'd them to consent to a Treaty with the Emperour, before he should hear any news of their misfortune, and of the loss of the numbers of men who had been killed in defending the Wall. They expected better and more honourable Articles.

Tamerlan began to be weary with the long siege, eight days were spent since the last assault, and he saw no change in the Citizens resolutions, and understood not that the King of *China* made any haste to fight him; but when the King heard the Governour of *Pekin* was kill'd, he was afraid of the consequence; this made him draw towards the Besiegers with more speed with his Army in Bat-

Battel. *Axalla*, who lodged upon the Wall, perceived the Enemy firſt: he went therefore to inform the Prince, he rejoyced to hear ſuch good news, but his joy was much more increaſed when he ſaw the Deputies of the City, who came to yield themſelves and their City into his hands. The Emperour receiv'd them with his wonted kindneſs, promiſing the Inhabitants his protection, if they would continue to him faithful, but he threatned them with ſevere puniſhments, if they offer'd to revolt.

The Articles were agreed to, the Garriſon, in number about eighteen thouſand men, went out, they were the remainder of thirty thouſand in the beginning of the ſiege, which laſted two full Months. The Citizens were confirmed in all their priviledges, and were mightily taken and enamoured with the ſweet and loving diſpoſition of their new Lord.

At this ſame time the King of *China*, who was at hand with all his Army, underſtood that the City was delivered up by the Garriſon that he met in his way. The Lieutenant Governour he commanded to be executed, with many Captains, for their Cowardice, but he pardonned the Souldiers who were not ſo guilty. He commanded all his Army to ſtop their march in the very place where he received the news of this Cities ſurrender, thinking more convenient to wait for *Tamerlan* there in a Ground that lay well for his Forces to draw up. The *Tartars* ſpent eight days in repairing the breaches, and furniſhing the Town with all neceſſaries fit to abide a ſiege, whatever happened. The Emperour alſo muſtered

ſtered his whole Army, paid off his Souldiers, increaſed their Wages, and rewarded every man according to his deſervings: he aſcribed the honour of this Conqueſt, ſo conſiderable, to the cares and wiſe conduct of *Axalla*, therefore he offer'd him the Government over this City and the Country which he had already conquered; but he very fairly refuſed it, deſiring the Prince to beſtow it upon ſome other Body, becauſe he deſired no other reward but to bear a ſhare in the labours of his Maſter, whoſe Glory ſhould be his chief aim and deſire. This anſwer pleaſed the Prince, for he had offer'd it to him, only becauſe he had well deſerved it, but he was not willing that he ſhould take it; for he was deſirous to have him always nigh his perſon, knowing that he was courageous, faithful and ingenious, and well experienced in the Affairs of War: When he refus'd it, the Prince of *Tanais* accepted it, with the Title of *Vice-Roy*.

Tamerlan, having ſet all things in good order, and diſpatched ſome Meſſengers to the Emperour his Uncle, and all his Friends to inform them of his happy ſucceſſes, and ſatisfied his Souldiers, who were ten thouſand men leſs than before, he caus'd Prayers ſolemnly to be offer'd up to the God of Hoſts during a whole day. After this he march'd to find the Enemy, who was with all his Army of his Subjects and Allies at *Sintehu*. As ſoon as the King of *China* had underſtood that our Army was paſſed over the River of *Culiſu*, he caus'd it to be proclaimed all over his Camp, that every one ſhould be ready to fight, for he did not deſire to ſee the *Tartarians* farther in his Country,

to eat it up and destroy it. But there was no Wisdom in that resolution, for it caus'd him to lose his own advantages, and run head-long into the mischief that was at hand; for had he lengthened the War as he ought, the many and strong Towns, which were to be besieged one after another, would have undermined *Tamerlan*'s Army, and render'd it unable to stand against his fresh Troops; and for the *Tartars*, they could not in reason advance so far as to leave behind them any one Town, which might have cut off their Provisions. Reason and Justice obliges Commanders of an Army to deal in this manner, otherwise they may soon destroy the most flourishing Army.

Therefore the Emperour could not but say, privately to some about him, not in a boasting manner, for he never us'd to boast of the greatest advantages that he hath had over his Enemies, *That the King of* China *was ill advised to desire a Battel; that he would doubtless have cause to repent of this folly at his leisure, because his Souldiers were not to be compared to his Men in Strength and Courage.*

When the King of *China* understood that the *Tartars* were marching towards him, he advanc'd with his Army to meet them, in such a glorious manner, as if he had intended only to shew them his Grandeur and Riches. Nothing appear'd to the Eye but Gold and Silver in his Army, and the Chariot, upon which he was mounted, was so beset with Diamonds, Rubies and Pearls, that it was not possible stedfastly to fix the Eye upon it in the Sun.

This

This Prince, of about thirty three years old, had been brought up from his infancy in the delights and pleasures of the Court, and not in the troubles of the War, which requires a Body inur'd to pains, and hardened against the inconveniences of the Seasons. He was in his discourses insolent, from his Mouth drop'd nothing but Threatnings, Words of Contempt and Defiance, complaining that he had been surpris'd by the *Tartars*, and engag'd in a War without notice given, as it is the Custom of his people: Three or four of his Neighbouring Kings accompanied him in the same State and Splendour; so that the hopes of such rich Spoils as were to be gotten with the Victory, strangely encouraged the *Tartarian* Souldiers to behave themselves like men.

Whiles the two Armies were drawing nearer together, *Tamerlan* took the Town of *Thiauchevoi* in his march, which happened to be very useful to his Army, in regard of its good scituation in the midst of Waters and Pasture Grounds for Cattel, so that when *Tamerlan* saw it first, he resolved to pitch there his Tents, and see whether the Enemy would have so much boldness to attempt upon him in that place that would prove disadvantageous to him. To engage the *Chineses* the sooner to a Battel he sent them a defiance, and at the same time laid siege to *Panibu*, which was a little behind him. This Town was strong and well furnished with a stout Garrison; *Panibu* was distant from *Thiachevoi* about ten Leagues, so that it had not been convenient for the Emperour to return and assault it himself, for then he had been forc'd to turn his Back to the Enemy; he

he judg'd it therefore more fit for him to beset it with his Troops of Horse, for these two Reasons; First, to hinder the Enemy from breaking in upon his Army; and next, that he might with more ease approach nearer to the King of *China*. But this Precaution was not needful, nor the Consultation that happen'd thereupon; for when *Odmar* was return'd, he assur'd him, that the *Chineses* were within a Days March, and that in all likely-hood the Battel would be the Day following.

At this news the Prince sends for *Calibes*, who was with ten thousand Horse before *Panihu*, commanding him to come to him with speed. In the mean while he was careful to provide all things needful, and to seek his advantages to win the Victory.

The Army advanc'd softly within a League of *Thiauchevei*; and the next day understood for certain, that the *Chineses* were in their march towards him. The Emperour, with a merry Countenance, as soon as he had acquainted *Odmar* with the Order that he intended to observe, and drawn up his Men in the Field that he had chosen, look'd upon the Enemy in their march, at the head of six thousand Horse, with which he advanc'd before his Army, having *Calibes* with him. He used thus to view the Enemy himself, without trusting to other Mens Eyes. He endeavour'd to draw them into the Field, where his Army was ready for the Battel. When he had well considered this vast Army, he commanded *Calibes*, as soon as he should be assaulted, to retreat back in good order, and draw the *Chineses* nearer to the *Tartarian* Troops. He returned after-

wards to his Army to prepare them for the fight, disposing of his Infantry upon the decline of the Hill with their Artillery to defend them. They were in number sixscore thousand men, armed according to the Christians fashion, under several Captains who obeyed *Axalla* as their Lieutenant-General.

The Cavalry was drawn up in a plain Ground, having their Enemy at their right hand, and their Infantry at the left to withdraw towards it in case of necessity. They were in number fourscore thousand Horse. *Calibas*, with the *Tartars*, led the Van: He was to command thirty thousand divided into three Bodies of ten thousand a-piece, who had orders to join to him as soon as he should have drawn the Enemy into the Field, according to the Prince's Orders. *Odmar* was commanded to second him with thirty thousand more, and *Tamerlan* led the Rear, which he placed near one of the Wings of the Foot, which he look'd upon as the chief strength of his Army.

His intention was to let those threescore thousand Horse begin the Battel, led on by those two great Commanders: He hop'd, when they should have broken the Enemy, or shaken them, he would quickly defeat them. He commanded them therefore to advance forward, staying behind with his Infantry, and twenty thousand chosen Horse, able to win another Battel, if his Men had been beaten. When these things were thus order'd, *Calibes*, by retreating from the Enemy, drew them on forward, but sometimes he charg'd them home. It was a beautiful sight to behold that

that great Army ſtronger than ours, full of armed Chariots, with which the *Chineſes* expected to get a great advantage over *Tamerlan*'s Army. The *Chineſes* were full of Gold and Silver, their Armour, Horſes and Cloths, were ſo loaden, that the *Tartars* had juſt cauſe to wonder.

In the mean while the Emperour's Eye was every where; he was well pleaſed to ſee *Calibes* execute his Orders ſo punctually, and to behold the *Chineſes* draw towards him in good order. He endeavour'd to underſtand in what place their King was; for that purpoſe he had near him the Lord of *Vauchefu*, who was well acquainted with their Rules and Manners. This Lord caus'd the Prince to take notice that they had but one Body which was not divided into Van and Reer, and that the King was in the middle of his Chariots and Infantry. Upon this *Tamerlan* turn'd back to his Men, telling them, *That they muſt ſcatter that Golden Cloud, and that the King of* China *muſt give them a ſhare of his Riches.* As ſoon as he had ſpoken theſe words, he gave not time to the Enemy to reſt after a march of a long League, but ſent order to *Calibes* to begin to charge with his Van-guard, and that he ſhould ſend back his ten thouſand wearied Horſe to him. *Calibes* could not prevail upon them to retreat, but they, as ſoon as the ſignal was given, deſired earneſtly to go in the Front, and give the firſt On-ſet, under the Command of a young Lord named *Zicotatanes*. This Lord charg'd the formoſt of the *Chineſes* Army ſo ſtoutly, that he made them give back. The Battel was Bloody, for every one endeavour'd to ſhew his Courage, and fight for the

honour of their Prince, and the safety of their Nation. In an hours time it was not known which Party had got the advantage; but at last, when *Calibes* had been wounded, and his Squadrons broken, the Enemy for a time seem'd to have won the Victory.

The Prince, who was an Eye-witness of this first charge, before he withdrew back to his Reer, saw this dishonour without any alteration in his Countenance: His mind was so setled and unmoveable in prosperity and adversity, he only said, That the vast numbers of his Enemy, though in a Confusion, had oppress'd the courages of his men.

These thirty thousand Horse already defeated were almost all *Tartarians*, that fight not in the same manner as the *Parthians*, nor in that good order. Two thousand of them retreated with their wounded Commander behind the Prince, who caused his Wound to be search'd before him, and ordered him to go back behind his Infantry with the other wounded Men, where a great many other *Tartars* rallied.

That which *Calibes* could not perform with the *Tartars*, *Odmar* did with the *Parthians*; he charg'd and broke into the Enemies with that fury, that he made a way through their whole Army, and afterwards fell upon one of their Wings, forcing them to retreat to their Chariots where the King was in person. It had been wisdom to stop there, or turn another way, but his fury made him think nothing impossible for his Courage to perform: this perswasion caus'd him to assault that dreadful Barricade that kept in the King of *China*, who had

had march'd forward to help his Cavalry in their Retreat, and obliged them to rally after they had been broken by *Odmar*. But in this Attempt he found a ſtrong reſiſtance, and loſt a great many Men to no purpoſe. This cauſed him to ſtop his Men, and ſend to the Prince for Infantry and Artillery, with which he aſſur'd him that he ſhould gain the Victory. At this news the Prince commanded his Party to ſtand, and ſent him fifty thouſand Foot, with ſome of his Artillery, under the Command of *Axalla*, whom he had order'd to force the Barricado of Chariots. This brave Captain with all ſpeed march'd up to *Odmar*, and having put his Artillery in the Front, with which he caus'd ſuch a diſorder amongſt the Chariots that their Governours oblig'd the King to fight the *Tartars*. He had an hundred and fifty thouſand Men about his Perſon, but *Axalla* was not terrified with this vaſt number of Enemies; he was thereby more encouraged to fight, ſo that he was never obſerv'd to have behaved himſelf more bravely, and with greater ſucceſs.

In the mean while *Odmar* ſlept not, he knew that the Kings Cavalry that he had broken were rallied behind their Body of Foot; he charg'd them again afreſh, ſcatter'd and put them to flight.

At the ſame time *Tamerlan* came in with a choiſe Body of Horſe, and the reſt of his Infantry which he had commanded to advance to ſuccour *Axalla*; without any delay he charg'd and cut all in pieces that ſtood before him, getting as far as the ſecond Barricado of Chariots, where the King of *China* was with forty thouſand Men untouch'd.

touch'd. Here the Fight was cruel for two or three hours, every one striving to overcome; but at last the Reserve of Horse with which the Prince had charg'd so vigorously, assisting the Foot in good time, got the Victory, and put the *Chineses* to flight.

The Day was won in this manner, after a bloody Fight of eight hours; the Night put a stop to the Slaughter, and favour'd the *Chineses* in their Retreat. Their Camp was taken and plunder'd by the *Tartars*, the King himself wounded with an Arrow in the Arm became a Prisoner; two Kings that assisted him lost their Lives in the Hurly-burly, and two others were taken with him.

This compleat Victory enrich'd the Souldiers with Plunder. The Spoils were infinite and inestimable, nothing but Precious Stones, and Vessels of Gold and Silver appear'd every where, with such rich and beautiful Chariots that they could not be too much admir'd.

After this happy success the Prince rode round about the Field, as well to hinder more Effusion of Blood, as to rally his Men and place his Guards; he unburden'd himself of the rest of his cares upon *Axalla*, leaving the King of *China* in his Custody in the middle of his Infantry. He intended to see him the next day, in the mean whiles he gave order to have him cured of his Wound, and well treated.

There was nothing more beautiful to the Eye than the rich Armour which the *Chineses* had put on that day, and the many Ornaments with which they had trimmed themselves; for the diversity

of

of colours yielded at a diſtance, the moſt ſatisfying proſpect in the World. Their Army was more numerous than the *Tartars*, but they had neither the dexterity nor the courage of *Tamerlan*'s Men. They ſay, that the King had in the Field three hundred and fifty thouſand Horſe, and two hundred thouſand Foot; but the moſt part of them were unskilful Brutes, who ſuffer'd themſelves to be butcher'd without reſiſtance, and without making uſe of their Numbers; for they had no knowledge in the Art of War, or ſo little that they were not much the better for it. Threeſcore thouſand Men died in this Battle.

Tamerlan gave his orders for the burying of the dead, and for thanks to be given to God for the Victory; afterwards he caus'd all the wounded to be carefully healed, of both Armies. He went to viſit *Calibes*, who was ill with the Infection of the Air, and of a Wound, which hinder'd him not from performing his duty and commanding the Van, as carefully as if he had been in perfect health. The Prince was well pleas'd with him, he look'd upon him as the chief Commander, next to himſelf, amongſt the *Tartarians*; for he was ſo well beloved by them, that he was very well obeyed.

Tamerlan received news, that one of the King of *China*'s Brothers was fled with fifteen thouſand Horſe; he ſent thirty thouſand to purſue him, and commanded *Panibu* at the ſame time to yield. This City readily obeyed, ſending their Keys, which cauſed the Army to advance forward into the Country.

Tamerlan had been almoſt a day and a night on

Horseback, from which he lighted about two a Clock in the Morning; they brought to him a Loaf of Bread and Water, for he never drank any Wine; afterwards he laid himself down upon a Carpet, discoursing with his Officers afterwards till Sun-rising. *I was,* saith Alhacent, *always near him at that time, and could never hear the least word from his Mouth which might discover any pride that he took in his good success; he only pitied the King of* China *because of his unhapiness, caused by his refusal of surrendring into his Hands what belong'd to him by right. He told* Odmar *that God had led him as it were by the Hand to obtain that day, without the loss of any of his chief Officers, a great Victory; that he was sorry for the death of his other Souldiers, but he thought them happy because they had lost their Lives in the service of their Prince, fighting courageously against the Heathens who worshipped false Gods.*

The next day *Tamerlan* caused all his rich Tents to be spread, and placed his Guards in such a manner as might make his Grandeur to appear the more: the chief Officers of his Army being near his Person to wait upon him, he then sent to *Axalla* that he should bring before hime the King of *China*. As soon as he understood that he was coming, he went out of his Tent to meet him. This great Prince was not cast down by his misfortune, he appear'd at this instant with the Countenance of a Man of courage. As soon as he had enquir'd of *Axalla*, by his Interpreter, which was the Emperour, he spoke to him in this stately manner; *My Gods have been so displeas'd against my Country, and my happiness, that they have*

made

made me thy Prisoner: And if it be true what Fame speaks of thee, that Tamerlan *fights for nothing but for the glory of his Nation, this that thou hast now purchased ought to satisfie thy mind, to have subdued with thy Sword the Off-spring of the Sun, and the Lord of the World, who is now in thy power and at thy disposal.* He spoke these words with a free and bold air, and not as a Supplicant. The Emperour saluted him first very civilly, and caus'd him to be led into his Tent, where he answer'd him by his Interpreter, That an unjust cause is hateful to every Divinity, whether true or false; that for his part, he gave thanks to the immortal and incomprehensible God, the Creator of Heaven and Earth, whom he worshipped, for the late Victory which he acknowledg'd to have receiv'd from his bounty alone; as the King of *China* ascrib'd the cause of his misfortune to his mistaken Divinities: but he promis'd that he would not abuse the advantage that he had got upon him, but that he would endeavour by all civil and courteous dealing to cause him to forget his present condition. The King of *China*, surpris'd with this unexpected discourse, return'd him his thanks. At the close of this discourse *Tamerlan* drew back a little, to observe the motions and behaviour of this great Prince, whom he beheld stedfastly with delight. He ask'd him afterwards, what he thought of the Actions and courage of his Souldiers in the Fight? The King answer'd, That when he saw so feeble an Army, in Comparison of his, came to him, he was fully perswaded to get the Victory, but the Gods had otherwise order'd it. He enquir'd from *Tamerlan*, whether his Brother

had

had been killed or a Priſoner. Before the reply was made, one of the Commanders there preſent deſired to know whether he did fight near his perſon. He told them that he commanded in the Battel the Cavalry, and wore as himſelf a Princely Attire. They anſwer'd him that he was taken; then he fetch'd a deep ſigh, which cauſed ſome to be ſo inquiſitive why he was diſpleaſed, that his Brother ſhould run the ſame hazards as himſelf, and fall into the ſame condition. He replyed, That in his misfortune he had this comfortable perſwaſion, That his Brother (*the ſecond expectation of the* Chineſes) would not forſake him, but would attempt every thing to re-eſtabliſh his Affairs, and the reputation of his Countrymen. He lamented pittifully at his miſhap, but praiſed his Courage: But *Tamerlan* knew very well that he was eſcaped and out of his reach, for he had rallied all the broken Troops of Horſe and was fled. *Odmar* had been ſent after him to hinder him from gathering together too numerous a Body.

The chief Priſoners were brought next, they were loaden with ſo much Gold and precious Jewels, that it is not to be conceived. The two Kings, Confederates and Tributary to *China*, appear'd firſt. As ſoon as this Prince ſaw them coming, he aroſe to honour them, and they fell down and worſhip'd him almoſt in their ſalutation; he wiſh'd them to riſe from the Ground; *Tamerlan* ask'd who they were; the King of *China* anſwer'd that they were his Friends; one the King of *Chiampa*, the other the King of *Cochinchine*; and that he was ſorrowful for their misfortune as much as for his own, which made him will-

willing to follow them in death. He ſpoke in this manner, imagining that the *Tartarian* Cuſtom was like that of *China*, to kill and deſtroy all their Priſoners of War, and ſometimes, in a ſavage manner, to feed upon their Fleſh. But the Emperour receiv'd them with expreſſions of kindneſs, and aſſur'd them, that he would uſe them well and gently.

The King of *China* felt a great ſatisfaction at this unexpected civility and humanity. He was not above thirty years of Age, but had a long Face, great black Eyes, a Noſe of a middle ſize, a long Beard, which he handled often, a grave and lofty Air, like that of a great Prince. His Kingdom contains two hundred thouſand Fortreſſes, fifteen great Provinces or Governments; in them are to be found many Golden Mines, and ſome Silver, and a certain Herb which we call *Rhubarb*. They reckon that he hath ſeventy Kings wearing Crowns, his Tributaries. This large and wide Country which we call *China*, is named by the Inhabitants *Tame*; and the People, whom we call *Chineſes*, are named by them *Tanjis*. This Country is full of Fowl and Fiſh, becauſe of the many Rivers that run through it. Silk is here ſo plentiful, that the Beggars are cloathed therewith. Wool is here ſcarce, but this want is remedied with much Cotton and Linnen. The Climate is temperate. The Men have liberty here to have as many Wives as they can conveniently keep: They wear their Hair long, but the Women have ſhort Perrukes. There is always a General, or Governour over the whole Kingdom, next to the King, called by them *Tuton*.

Tuton. The Brother of the King of *China* had this Office, which is of so great importance, that the Laws command him to be always within the Kingdom. But this man intreated the King his Brother so earnestly, that he might be present at the Battel, which he was perswaded to win, that he yielded to his importunities. He had plac'd in his stead a Lord which the King did not trust. This griev'd the King when he consider'd that he had been guilty of so great a fault, as to suffer him to hazard with him his person in the same fight, and to have left the Government of so large an Empire in unfaithful hands.

Tamerlan called afterwards together his Privy-Council, to advise what was to be done with the Prisoners, and how they should use their Victory. At that time news was brought, that the King's Brother was safely arrived at *Quanto*, a City which he had fortified, that he was endeavouring to furnish it with all manner of Provisions, and that he was busily employed in gathering together an Army. As soon as *Tamerlan* heard this, he sent the Prisoners, with two thousand *Parthian* Horse to *Pekin*, for his Army had rested themselves several Days: he commanded them to stop there a little, and carry them over the Mountains to *Burday*, a City that had been always faithful to the *Tartars*, and that they should there keep them till they had further order. *Malaxan*, *Axalla*'s Lieutenant General, was to command that Party; by him the Prince writ to the Emperour his Uncle, and to his Viceroy of *Sachetay*, to acquaint them with his happy success and Victory, where he had lost but few

of

of his Men, but the *Chineſes* many. By this means he freed himſelf from a great many Chariots and Baggage that incumber'd his Army, ſending them with the Priſoners. He order'd alſo the Recruits to be haſtened, and forty thouſand Foot to be gathered in *Parthia*, and thirty thouſand Horſe in *Tartaria*, that they might come to him before the Forces of the King of *China* could be able to make head to ſtop him. He adviſ'd what was beſt to be done upon this news, and it was reſolved, That *Quanton* ſhould be ſpedily beſieg'd, and, if it were poſſible, to ſhut up the Kings Brother in the City.

This place is one of the chiefeſt of the Kingdom, very populous, and naturally ſtrong. It was about forty Leagues from the Field where the Battel was fought. *Odmar* took in his way thithermany ſmall Towns, without oppoſition, and was march'd as far as the Walls, diſperſing his Troops round about, with an intention not to depart without the Prince's order, to whom he had diſpatch'd a Meſſenger, to underſtand his pleaſure. An univerſal fright had ſeiz'd upon the hearts of all the Inhabitants of the Kingdom, though the Kings Brother endeavour'd to ſettle their minds, and oblige them to take Courage. The Humanity of *Tamerlan*, and the Civilities that he had expreſſed to the King of *China*, and to the reſt of his Priſoners, being noiſ'd abroad in the Country, ſatisfied their minds, and made them bear their misfortune with patience. Every one knew already that the Prince was of a mild and obliging temper; that he took a great delight in ſhewing his mercy to ſuch as deſerved or

deſired

desired it, by their behaviour and repentance; and that when he was angry, by an indiscreet fierceness, he was loth to be cruel and rough to any: But in regard his design was to bring down the proud, and to raise up the humble, he observ'd an equality in his Rewards and Punishments, to prevent by that means all occasions and inclinations of mischief. He had another good quality that caus'd him to be admir'd and cherish'd by all the World: he was a religious observer of his word, and no Person durst attempt to make him break it, without deserving his displeasure. The fame of so many good qualities, and of so rare a Virtue in *Tamerlan*, spreading about amongst the ignorant *Chineses*, produc'd this good effect; that when once they had obtain'd his word, they depended upon it as if he had put it immediately in execution. This is of an high importance to settle the interest of a Conquerour amongst his new Subjects.

After all these orders given, *Tamerlan* commanded publick Prayers to be said, to implore the Divine assistance. He distributed Moneys afterwards to the Captains, that they might have a care to heal the wounded, and provide necessaries for them; and with the rest of his Army, in good order, march'd towards *Quanton*. He had order'd *Odmar* to Post himself on the other side of the Town, to hinder the Kings Brother from carrying into it his succours, in case he should attempt to put any in; willing him to oppose himself with all his power, and to fight him in case of necessity; for he inform'd him that he was coming with the Army to besiege that City.

At

At this ſame time the Kings Brother ſent Embaſſadours to *Tamerlan*, to know how the King did, and to deſire leave to viſit him. *Tamerlan* was glad of this requeſt, becauſe he feared that he would have Proclaim'd himſelf King of *China*, and by that means have created him much more trouble than his elder Brother. In the mean while, the Prince of *China* having underſtood in what condition the Citizens of *Quanton* were, he reſolved to ſuccour them, and adventure another Battel; becauſe, as he thought, he had the Troops of his Allies, and his own Army, numerous enough to do this buſineſs: for that purpoſe he march'd ſtraight to *Porchio*, ſcituate upon a great River, where he intended to build a Bridge with Boats, having Materials in abundance.

As ſoon as *Tamerlan* had underſtood his motion, he caus'd a Ditch to be made at the end of the Bridge that was over the River, with a Fortification to prevent all ſudden attempts; placing there three or four thouſand of his beſt Souldiers to Guard it. In the mean while, as the Enemy drew near, he ſtood with his Army drawn up on this ſide the River, and took notice of their countenance and motion.

Both Armies continued in this manner ten or twelve days, without performing any thing worthy of notice. At laſt *Tamerlan* had news brought him, that the Kings Brother had gathered together a great many Boats, and was making of a Bridge, at a narrow place called *Cambin*, about ten Leagues from his Camp. At firſt he took no notice that he knew it, ſtaying in the ſame place with his Troops, without attempting

ing any thing; but when he understood for certain, that the Bridge was perfected, he gave order to fifteen thousand Horse to attack such as were passed over the River, commanding his Body of Foot to follow after. He had left behind him at *Porchio* as many as were needful to secure his Camp; the rest of his Horse, Commanded by the Prince, brought up the Reer. He stop'd, or advanc'd his Army, according to the news that he received at every foot in his March, of the number and posture of his Enemies that had pass'd over the River. About Midnight they left their Camp, and came to their Rendezvous about Noon. *Odmar* was there half an hour before the rest, but as soon as he understood that there was no more of the *Chineses* on his side of the River than he was able to beat, he stop'd with his Party without medling with them; because he wish'd that more would adventure over, and he staid for *Tamerlan*'s coming. He thought fit to send some Scouts to understand how their number increas'd: when he perceived that there were about fifty thousand passed over the River, he sent news of it to *Tamerlan*; who was at hand, and march'd directly to attack them. His coming was not expected, for they knew nothing of his March: He found them in disorder, so that at the first On-set he put them to flight. Some of them resisted with courage, but not so stoutly as they might have done in so advantageous a Post as they were in; for they had the River on the one side, and a large Marsh on the other side. It is certain, that if they had but known their strength, and the advantage of the place, a small

ſmall reſiſtance had been able to ſtop the *Tartarians*. But as ſoon as *Tamerlan*'s Infantry had got as far as the Rivers ſide, and had pierced through to the Bridge of Boats, they began to break and ſink it. They had a great Ship in the manner of a Fire-ſhip, coming down with the Stream; as ſoon as it was within a convenient diſtance, the *Tartars* ſet it on fire. This flaming Engine, carried with the ſtrength of the Water, beat with fury againſt the Bridge, broke ſome of the Boats, ſcattered others, and burn'd thoſe that were neareſt. This ſtrange ſight aſtoniſh'd the *Chineſes* that were paſſed over the River, becauſe they ſaw no hopes of ſaving themſelves by a Retreat. Twenty thouſand of them were kill'd in the place, and amongſt the reſt the Prince of *Cochinchine*, at the firſt On-ſet, where he behaved himſelf like a Man of courage. The Brother of the King of *China* ſaw his Men deſtroyed and drowned, and himſelf unable to aſſiſt them. Though he had loſt in this Encounter but the third part of his Army, and had yet one hundred thouſand freſh Men, there was no likelihood that he would hazard to fight with them againſt *Tamerlan*, who commanded the Head of the Prince of *Cochinchine* to be cut off, and to be ſent to the Inhabitants of *Quanton*; for he was one of the nobleſt Subjects of the Empire: this ſight therefore would be able to make them believe the Victory, that they might not expect any other ſuccours.

Axalla beſieged them ſo cloſe, and gave them ſo little time, that though they endeavoured to defend themſelves vigorouſly, and were continu-

ally at handy-blows with his Men, they found themselves every day weaker, and their Enemies draw by degrees nearer to their Walls. When they found themselves thus wearied with watching and fighting, and no likelihood of safety by an obstinate resistance, they resolved to fly to the Conquerours mercy. They sent word to *Axalla*, that they desir'd to treat with him. He sent them word back again, that they had more reason to rely upon the Emperours mercy, than their own strength; and that for his part, he would so order the business, that they should have no cause to repent of their resolutions. After a few Messages and Discourses of yielding, they desired eight days to send to the Brother of the King of *China*, to acquaint him with their estate and condition; and that if within fifteen days they were not relieved, they promised to yield up the City; upon condition that *Tamerlan* should maintain their Priviledges, and treat them in the same manner as the Kings of *China* had done before. *Axalla* returned them this Answer; That he had power to treat with them, and receive them favourably when-ever they would fly to the mercy of his Prince: And that though the time they required was long, he would nevertheless inform him of their desires, and write for them. But that immediately, without delays, they ought to give him Hostages for his security; and that upon that condition all Acts of Hostility should cease, and that he would grant them a Truce, till he understood further of his Princes mind. He sent therefore to *Tamerlan*, to acquaint him with this good news, which he received with much

more

more joy, than for the late Victory obtained of the Enemy. He granted all that the Inhabitants of *Quanton* had desired, at the Request of *Axalla*, sending him a Commission to end this business as he should judge most convenient.

In the mean while the Prince was watching, to observe what motion and course the Kings Brother would take after his late overthrow. He intended, if he did not forsake the Banks of the River, to pass over and pursue him to the Sea side. After three or four days staying, he was advised by his Captains, to get over the Water only with his Cavalry. His intentwas to march three or four Leagues into the Country, to hinder the *Chineses* from seeking a Ford, which they intended, that they might more speedily succour *Quanton* that was besieged.

This fear quickly ceased, as soon as the Prince of *China* had seen the *Tartars* on his side of the River; for not thinking himself safe near so powerful an Enemy, he retreated with speed towards the Sea, sheltering himself amongst the Mountains; into which the Cavalry could not easily approach, and where his Army could intrench and fortifie themselves with ease. When he was come to that place, and had rested his Men, he consulted with the Grandees of *China* that were about him, what resolution was best to be taken. They advis'd him to seek the fairest means; and for that purpose, that he should send to *Tamerlan* Overtures of Peace, to ransom the King, and save the rest of the Provinces; telling him, that he should endeavour to purchase Peace with Gold or Silver, seeing that so much

Blood had been ſpilt in vain: That they perceiv-ed that the Gods were wroth with their Nation, ſeeing that they had favour'd their Enemies ſo apparently; and therefore they had beſt yield to neceſſity, and to the conditions that *Tamerlan* would impoſe upon them: For that purpoſe, the Kings brother ſent for a ſafe Conduct for ſuch as he ſhould ſend to treat with *Tamerlan*, which was readily granted to as many as he ſhould ap-point.

In the mean while *Quanton* was ſurrender'd in-to *Axalla*'s Hands, who cauſed the Garriſon to depart, and received the Inhabitants in the pro-tection of *Tamerlan*. and all ſuch as were wil-ling to ſtay there without Armour. He march'd into the City amidſt the general applauſe of the People, who were deſirous to ſee their new Prince. They received him very honourably; *Axalla* put thirty thouſand Men there in Gar-riſon, giving them ſome Money to ſupply their neceſſities until the Army could Muſter and re-ceive the three Months pay due to them, which amounted to eight hundred thouſand *Tentins*, which are worth four hundred and fifty thouſand Crowns, or thereabouts. The Inhabitants of *Quanton* readily paid this Money.

Whilſt theſe things were acted, the Emperour ſent *Albacem* to *Axalla*. He found him treating and feaſting his Captains, in expectation of his Princes commands, which he brought to him; to ſtay at *Quanton*, and ſend him all the Infantry. He took this courſe, to fright and ſtrike a ter-rour into his Enemies the ſooner, who might perceive after the taking of that City, when the

Army

Army ſhould be all in a Body, that *Tamerlan*'s intent was to march further into the Country, and conquer more of the Kingdom. He thought this to be the beſt way to ſucceed in his deſign, to oblige them the ſooner to ſeek an honourable Peace, and ſettle his own intereſt in thoſe Parts. *Albacent* returned back from *Quanton* to the Prince, being much ſatisfied to have ſeen that beautiful and great City, ſo well fortified and ſo populous, ſtanding in a fruitful Soil, abounding in all manner of good things. The Army was two Months and a half about it, without ſuffering any want of Proviſions; and might have continued there three or four Weeks with eaſe and plenty; for there was no lack of any thing in the City, unleſs it were of Men; for many had been kill'd during the Siege. To ſupply this want, the Kings Brother advanc'd with his Army, to caſt in ſome recruits. Many alſo of the *Tartars* were dead, through the unwholſomneſs of the Air, and the violent Heats unto which their Bodies were not accuſtomed. Therefore they waited and watched the Recruits that were coming in haſte to the Army, before it could advance further into the Kingdom, or aſſault any other place. *Axalla*, who ſtaid in the Town, ſpent his time in making up the Breaches which the Artillery had made, and win the affections of the Citizens. It was a very ſtrange thing, that not one of the Inhabitants went out with the former Governour when he left the place; he led with him thirteen thouſand Men only, which were remaining of thirty thouſand that he had in the beginning of the Siege; ſome of them were dead and

killed in the Assaults, some staid behind in the Town with the Inhabitants without Armour, willing to obey the Conquerour. This was a remarkable Passage, which caus'd *Tamerlan* to conclude from thence, that they were but an unconstant People so soon to forget their former Lord, who with his Predecessors had Commanded them and Govern'd them in peace, above two hundred years. This is a good Lesson for those that Govern Republiques and Empires, not to have too great a confidence in the common People, let their profession of zeal and affection be never so great. This consideration oblig'd *Axalla* to doubt of the future, and to confess to *Albacem*, that he knew not how so great a Multitude could be kept in order and commanded, in case any loss or misfortune should happen to his Party. He commanded him therefore to tell the Prince, that he should not proceed on further in the Conquest of the Country, but endeavour to treat with the Enemy before his Army should decrease; and that he should consider, before he left the Country, how he should be able to keep under such a Multitude of People in his absence, which were so inclinable to change, and so unconstant.

A whole year had been spent already in this Expedition, and the Companies that decreas'd daily through the Distempers of the *Autumn*, discovered the weakness into which they should infallibly fall. The Prince considered all these things; besides, he feared that a too long and tedious absence would cause some disturbance in his Empire, as it happens very often: He thought therefore it was as much honour for him to keep,

by

by his wisdom, what he had gained, as to win and conquer it by his Valour. Therefore it was his mode never to refuse reasonable offers of Peace, and to value that more which he obtain'd by that Method, than that which he purchas'd with his Sword. He consider'd also that if he could preserve all that Country which he had over-run, which made the third part of the Kingdom, and receive from the remainder a yearly Tribute, he should be able to bridle in the King of *China*, and hinder him from revolting; and that before he would attempt any such thing, he would think a while upon it: And that he would take such a course to secure his interest against the natural inconstancy of the Nation, that by the punishment that he would inflict upon the Offenders, he would scare and terrifie all others from a Rebellion.

He was therefore resolved to hearken to the first reasonable Proposals of Agreement, and to bound in that place the Conquests of *China*; seeing that what he had already taken was almost the third part of the Kingdom, and he had enough to bridle the King of *China*, and to hinder him from revolting, if he should at any time desire it.

The Ambassadours, who were some of the chief Lords of the Kingdom, came to *Tamerlan*; who received them as courteously as could be expected, shewing to them all the Grandeur and State of his Court, and the strength of his Army, that they might have a stronger inclination to be at peace with him. When they had saluted *Tamerlan*, they told him that the Prince of *China*

had sent them to treat with him about the Liberty of their King, and the Peace of *China*. That the Fame of his mildness and humanity had invited them to try it by experience, before they would again complain of the ungratitude of their Gods. That they were now highly displeased at their own neglect. That they had not prevented his entrance into their Kingdom, by yielding to him all those things that he requested of them with so much equity and Justice. That now they were come to make him full amends, and receive from him such conditions as he should require. That they were at present sensible, though too late, that nothing was able to stop the progress of his Army, and that they were willing to be Examples of this to future Ages.

The Prince listened with attention to their discourse, which he caused to be interpreted to him, and made this reply: That they had good reason to rely upon his humanity and mildness, but that they had done wiser, if they had made trial of it before they had experienced the strength of his Army. In such a case their condidion had been better, and they had been more kindly used. But as the design of War is to make such persons hearken to Terms of Peace, as were not willing without it; and, in regard they desired it, he assur'd them, That he was willing to yield to Peace, and grant them that which was the first Declaration of his mildness and humanity to them; but that on their side, they ought to propose and make offer of such just and reasonable Conditions, as his Council would yield to after a due examination. *Tamerlan* after these words de-

departed from them, wishing them to declare the Conditions in Writing, and that they should have an answer. They appeared to be very joyful for the kind expressions that the Prince had given them, being in their minds most confident of concluding a Peace.

The Conditions that they offer'd were, That they would yield *Pekin*, with all the Gountry between that and the Mountains, with their Fortresses: That they would satisfie all the Charges of the War till the Peace was concluded: That they would give two Millions of Gold to redeem their King. The Prince answered them, That he was resolved to keep whatever he had conquer'd, which belonged to him by the right of War: That he was willing that the River where his Army was encamped should be the limits of both Kingdoms, as far as *Porchis* and the Sea: That the King of *China* should pay to him and his Successors yearly, as a Tribute, two hundred thousand Crowns, which he should send to *Pekin*, and five hundred thousand Crowns ready Money for to defray the Expences of the War; and that in consideration of this sum, the King should be released and sent home; that all the other Prisoners should pay to such as had taken them, Ransoms according to their Qualities; only the Kings should pay down each of them one hundred thousand Crowns for their releasement: That no *Chineſe*, within his Territories, should hereafter be kept Prisoner or sold as a Slave: That there should be a free Trade between both Kingdoms: That the King of *China* should leave as Hostages for the performance of the Treaty, his Brother and the

the two Kings that were Priſoners; and beſides them, twelve other Lords of *China*, who ſhould be exchang'd every year by a like number that ſhould take their rooms, and bring with them the Tribute of two hundred thouſand Crowns.

Theſe conditions, though hard and grievous, were accepted, becauſe they were not in a condition to refuſe them; for their Armies were deſtroyed, their ſtrength was weakened, the beſt Men and the flower of their Army kill'd or wounded, and the remainder were affrighted; their King taken, two Battels loſt, the two chief Cities of the Kingdom ſnatch'd out of their hands, and all their chief Paſſages at their Enemies command. In regard therefore that they were threatened with a general deſolation, and all the Country was full of fears and apprehenſions, they reckon'd that favour was ſhewed to them, to ſpare that which was left of their Kingdom, which would infallibly and totally be ruin'd, if the Peace was not concluded, and their King ſet at liberty. They were well inform'd, that the Emperours Army was to be recruited with other freſh Troops, that were in their march towards the Army. All theſe things conſidered, caus'd them to reſolve and yield to the conditions required, without any further debate, taking a ſtrong reſolution to bear with patience the Yoke of their Bondage, until ſuch time as they ſhould have a favourable opportunity to aſſert again their own liberties, and free themſelves from the *Tartars*.

In the mean while the Prince had diſpatch'd two thouſand Horſe, with a Commiſſion to bring with

with them the King of *China* from *Burda*, that he might ſwear to the Peace in Freedom. At *Quanton* he took the Oath: *Tamerlan* departed immediately to *Pekin*, carrying with him all the Hoſtages; and amongſt the reſt, the Kings eldeſt Son and Brother. The King went into his Kingdom, to appoint all things for the performance of the Articles agreed upon: He was received by his People with ſtrange tranſports of joy, inſomuch that they ſeem'd to adore him. *Tamerlan*'s vigilancy was mindful of every thing that might ſecure his conquered Countries: He look'd upon *Odmar* as the fitteſt Perſon to leave behind him, and govern in his abſence; he made him therefore his Vice-Roy, giving him an abſolute power over all the Country, with thirty thouſand Horſe, and fifty thouſand Foot, well furniſh'd with all needful things: they were to be diſpers'd into all the Garriſons and Strong-holds. He wiſh'd him to make his ordinary abode at *Quanton*, to cauſe good and ſtrong Guards to be kept all along the River; and to build a Fort at *Dermio*, to ſecure that place. He recommended to him the Perſon of the Lord of *Vauchefu*, who had expreſs'd ſo much zeal and affection to him in this War, and ſo much experience in Publick Affairs: for his Brother he was willing to keep him near his own Perſon, and give him an Eſtate in *Sachetay*; where he enrich'd and enobled him. He invited alſo ſeveral of the Inhabitants of *Quanton*, and of other places, to ſerve him; with an intention to ſettle them in his own Country, and ſend thither *Parthians* in their ſtead; to arm himſelf by that means againſt their inconſtancy.

All

All things having been thus order'd, the Army took the way to *Cambalu*; but before they began to march, the Prince ſent to the Emperour, his Uncle, to inform him of his happy ſucceſſes and return. In this Court were ſeveral jealous Heads, that blam'd *Tamerlan* for what he had done, becauſe he had not ſubdued and deſtroyed all *China*. But they underſtood not the difficulties that were to be overcome, and that it is not always good to purſue things to the uttermoſt; that turnings of Fortune are too ordinary: that ſuch as would have too much more than they ought, loſe often what they might have kept with honour and ſafety. In truth, by keeping what he had conquer'd, *Tamerlan* could juſtly name himſelf King of *China*. He had in his Poſſeſſion two of the moſt beautiful, and greateſt Cities of the Kingdom, with an infinite number of leſſer Towns, with an hundred Leagues in the Country limited with a great River, which could not hinder him from going over to the Enemies at his pleaſure, and yet ſtop'd them from coming into his Dominions without danger and trouble, in regard of the eaſineſs of the guard and defence of it. The King of *China* could not fail to pay his yearly Tribute, but he muſt at the ſame time draw upon himſelf the inconveniences of his Army: So that by this Peace *Tamerlan* got more honour, and deſerved more praiſes, than if he had deſtroyed all *China* with Fire and Sword, and ruined a People that had yielded themſelves into his Hands ſo freely to pay him Tribute.

One thing chiefly ſurpriſed the *Chineſes*, and caus'd them to be ſtrangely grieved: It was the Com-

Command that the Prince gave *Odmar* before his departure, to break down all the Idols that ſhould be found within his conquer'd Country; for he order'd them all to worſhip but one only God, according to the Cuſtom of the *Parthians*, unto whoſe Religion he wiſh'd that they would join and accuſtom themſelves. The People expected no ſuch proceedings, but they hoped to enjoy all their ancient liberty in all reſpects; but now they ſaw that they muſt of neceſſity yield to this Order, ſeeing that the Prince had left *Odmar* to Command them, one of the wiſeſt and moſt experienced Captains of his Empire, who had always a care to obſerve and put in execution his Lords Commands. When *Odmar* took his farewel of the Prince, he humbled himſelf as low as his Feet, according to the Cuſtom of the Country; but the Prince raiſed him up with a ſmiling Countenance, *I perceive*, ſaith he, *that thou art become a* Chineſe, *ſeeing that thou offereſt to worſhip me as they do their King; but the greateſt worſhip that I require of thee, is, that thou ſhouldeſt put my Commands in execution. I intreat thee above all things, to eſtabliſh amongſt my new Subjects the Honour and Service of God, and next my Authority; and remember that all theſe Perſons that I leave at thy command have been ſubdued by the Sword, and not by Love or their own Inclination: ſo that they are to be kept in and under by fear, and not to be truſted too far. I recommend my affairs to thy care*, Farewel. The Aſſiſtants took notice at this ſeparation, that the Prince never left any Body with ſo much regret and diſpleaſure, as he did then *Odmar*: But it was abſolutely needful to leave ſuch an one

as

as he was in this Country, a Man of that extraordinary wisdom, faithfulness, and experience.

The Army in their return homewards, carried with them all their sick People; and after two days March, they met with the new Recruits that were coming to assist them. The Prince order'd them to proceed on no further, but to return home towards *Cambalu*; whither he intended to go and meet with the Emperour, who intended to see him there, and give him a triumphing Reception, with all the Pomp and Magnificence imaginable.

It is remarkable, that after *Odmar* was absent, the Prince loved *Axalla* above all other Persons; he trusted him more than any other with the governing of his Army. His reputation and credit was always very great, but it was mightily increas'd by the taking of *Quanton*, which was his doing alone; for *Tamerlan* had left to him the management and carrying on of this Siege; every one remember'd how well he had behaved himself, when with the Prince of *Tanais* he enter'd into *China*. The Correspondency that he had to advance his Prince's Interest, and all his other noble and discreet Actions flew abroad, and were known all over the Empire.

Calibes led the Van; *Axalla*, unto whom the Prince had given two hundred thousand Crowns *per annum*, Commanded the main Body. This *Axalla*, whose mind was meditating upon great designs, could not see his Lord idle. He accompanied him into his own Country, but it was to perswade him to undertake some noble Enterprise,

priſe, which might redound to the glory and quiet of the Chriſtian Common-wealth, for which he had always a great affection; ſo that his Education amongſt People of another Religion could not oblige him to alter his mind.

After many days Journeys, news came to the Army, that the Emperour was already at *Cambalu*. This cauſed our Prince to ſend his Army to their Winter Quarters, into a good and plentiful Country, and with all expedition to haſten to that City. He made that ſpeed, that in a few days he arrived within four Leagues of *Cambalu*; where all the Princes and Grandees of the Emperour's Court, with ſome of the chief Inhabitants, met him, to congratulate his ſafe arrival and return from ſuch a glorious Conqueſt. The Prince embrac'd every one according to his Degree and Quality, with a Countenance full of goodneſs and Majeſty. The Empreſs, his Wife, was then with him, ſhe had always accompanied him, and was likewiſe welcom'd by all the People with extraordinary rejoycings. The next day the Emperour himſelf went out of the City to meet him, with a glorious and magnificent Train. The Prince paid him all the reſpect at the firſt interview that could be expected, and preſented him with the richeſt Chariots, and the moſt beautiful Horſes of *China*. It was obſerv'd, that when the Prince lighted from his Horſe to pay his reſpects to the Emperour, his Uncle, the old Man wept for joy. He offered to go down from his Chariot, but *Tamerlan* intreated him not to do him that wrong; and with all the ſubmiſſions and reſpects that he could expreſs

preſs to his Lord and Prince, he hindered him from his purpoſe. This old and grave Emperour, being very deſirous to ſee his Daughter that had been abſent from him ſo long, cauſed her Chariot to be uncovered, and deſired her to come up into his Chariot, that he might diſcourſe with her at his pleaſure. In the mean while the Prince was on Horſeback, drawing upon himſelf the Eyes of all the World, that could not ſufficiently admire him. He preſented afterwards *Calibes* to the Emperour, praiſing him for his good ſervices and faithfulneſs; which cauſed him to increaſe his Penſion, and give him one hundred thouſand Crowns. *Axalla* came next to him, and in few words he was told of his Valour and noble Deeds; to him he appointed one hundred thouſand *Tartarins* of Gold, to be paid him out of his Exchequer, after a kind reception; and gave him a Principality, to reward his Virtues, and expreſs the eſteem that he had of his Perſon.

CHAP. V.

The War of Tamerlan *againſt* Bajazet, *the* Turkiſh *Emperour. His defeat and impriſonment.*

ALL the Winter was ſpent in Sports, Plays, and Divertiſements; but before it was over, the Prince heard that *Bajazet* the *Turkiſh* Emperour, a ſtirring and a warlike Prince, had an intent to conquer the Empire of *Greece*; that he had won a Battel and put the Chriſtians to flight, in-

intending to lay Siege to *Constantinople*, the chief City of the Empire. This news, together with the earnest intreaties of the Embassadours sent to him from the Emperour *Paleologue*, made him resolve to send some of his Court to *Bajazet*, to inform him that the Prince whom he assaulted was his Confederate, and therefore he was obliged by that Alliance to intreat him not to attempt any thing to his prejudice, but to suffer him to live in peace in his Dominions. All this proceeded from the sollicitation of *Axalla*, who was related to the Family of the *Paleologues*, and had found a means to oblige his Lord to defend and protect him and the Empire of *Greece*, in the Profession of the Christian Faith, from the Invasion of *Mahometanism*; for he had been born there of *Genoese* Parents. *Tamerlan*'s Ambassadour was roughly treated; *Bajazet* proudly answer'd him, That his Lord should meddle with his own business, and give Laws to his own Subjects; without making any such application to him, who owed him no subjection nor respect. *Axalla* aggravated this Answer with the most hainous Circumstances, and endeavoured to incense the Prince against the *Ottoman* Family, thinking himself oblig'd to oppose its dangerous growth which might prove as destructive to the *Tartarian* Empire as to their weaker Neighbours. After a due consultation, the Ambassadour of the *Paleologue* was dismiss'd with this joyful news to his Master, That *Tamerlan* would not fail to assist him. *Bajazet* was not then asleep, he advanc'd every day forward in his conquests, and his happy successes had so besotted him, that he would not hearken to nor be-

lieve the reports of the *Tartarian* ſuccours, but look'd upon them as idle contrivances invented to ſcare him from his deſigns.

Tamerlan ſeem'd to be weary of reſt before the Winter was paſt; the freſh Lawrels of new Victories called him into the Field in the opening of the Spring, to diſ-ingage his word and perform his promiſe. *Axalla* never left urging him, until the Prince ſent him into *Sachetay* to gather together his Troops from all Parts, that in the beginning of the Spring he might appear with them in the Field.

This Army made the more haſte, becauſe news was brought by an expreſs Meſſenger, that there had been a Battel fought between *Bajazet* and the *Greeks*, who were overthrown in ſuch a manner that their Affairs were utterly loſt without a ſpeedy aſſiſtance; and that they would be forced to yield to the mercy of the *Ottoman* Family. *Tamerlan* had procur'd from the Emperour, his Uncle, one hundred thouſand Foot, and fourſcore thouſand Horſe, for this glorious expedition. He expected the ſame number from *Sachetay*, and imagin'd that the Princes and great Lords, that would accompany him in this War, would be able to make up fifty thouſand Men more. With theſe Forces he imagin'd that there was ſome likelyhood of obliging the *Ottoman* Family to hearken to reaſon, and free the *Grecians* from their apparent danger and oppreſſions. *Axalla* ſoon ſent him word that all things were ready, and his Souldiers prepared for a March in *Sachetay*. The Prince at this news took his leave of the Emperour, his Uncle, leaving behind the Princeſs his Spouſe,

Spouſe to comfort his Father in his decrepit old Age. Theſe *adieux* of the Uncle and the Nephew, and of the Prince and his Spouſe, were grievous and troubleſome; and the rather becauſe ſhe had never forſaken him in all his Travels and Expeditions. But when the glory of his Empire, the eaſe of his people, and the deliverance of his Friends were concerned, nothing was able to keep him. He often declar'd, That he had been born for War, and that he ought to take there his delights and pleaſure, and that all other things that he acted out of this Sphere he performed not with any affection. And he declared, That he was appointed by God to bring down the pride of imperious Tyrants.

The Night immediately before his departure from *Cambalu*, he had a Dream which we may not paſs over in ſilence. He thought he had ſeen a great Company of grave and old Men ſtretching out their Hands to him, intreating him to lend his aſſiſtance to free them from certain proud Tyrants that afflicted them with divers Torments. He often ſaid, That to his imagination he never beheld a more venerable Company that deſerved a greater reſpect and conſideration; ſome of them ſeem'd to him in his Sleep to be cloathed in white, beautiful Garments; others were attired in Cloth of Gold; ſome of them, as he thought, had Crowns on their Heads. The reſpect and compaſſion he had for them, obliged him in his Sleep to reach out his hand to them, and draw them all out of a very low place where they were ſhut up. The Prince diſcover'd this Dream the next day after his departure to many

of his Attendants; but as no person then could presume to tell him the meaning, he never mentioned it afterwards.

He went from *Cambalu*, conducted through the Town, followed with the Prayers and Wishes of all the People, and receiving all the expressions they could give him of their Love and Loyalty. Several persons of quality offered him many Gifts, in return of his kindnesses that the City had received from him during his abode there. *Calibes*, and the Prince of *Tanais*, attended upon him. The Prince was made chief Colonel of all the Infantry instead of *Axalla*, who had been before appointed to be Lieutenant-General of the whole Army, and Chief Commander of the Van. *Calibes* was to bring up the Reer. *Tamerlan* never had more hopeful Troops, nor a more numerous Army. Every day fresh Companies were coming in from all Parts to join the Army. The Lord of *Vaucheſu*, of *China*, earnestly desiring to express his thankfulness to his Benefactor by some noted Action, had leave granted to him by *Odmar* to accompany him in this glorious expedition. He brought with him twenty thousand of the *Chineſes*, who were glad to serve their new Lord, and understand the *Tartarian* Customs and Manners in War. *Odmar* was afraid of some mishap during the Prince's absence, not so much from the unconstancy of the *Chineſes*, as from the unconstancy of Fortune. *Tamerlan* had sent him word of his designs and expedition, unto which *Odmar* advis'd and encourag'd him, telling him also, That he was come on purpose to bring down the Proud and raise

raiſe up the Humble. Therefore there was nothing could more diſpleaſe and anger him than the ſight of a proud and haughty mind. He made this inclination of his ſufficiently appear when he was in *China*, for caſting his Eyes, and conſidering that lofty Nation, he ſaw nothing but an empty vanity in all their proceedings. *I am ſent*, ſaid he to his Officers, *to bring down the unſufferable pride of theſe people, and I hope I ſhall abaſe them.*

After a few days March *Tamerlan*'s Army got as far as *Ozara*, the General Rendezvous of all his Troops: And, becauſe they were not all arrived, he went with his Guards to *Samarcande*, the place of his Nativity, from whence he had been abſent about three years. *Zamay* came out to meet him with an infinite Multitude of people, who filled the Air with Acclamations, Applauſes, and Prayers, for his proſperity. All the Princes and Lords of the Country met him alſo to pay him their reſpects; and the whole City did ring with joy for the happy return of their noble Prince whom the people loved intirely. He ſtaid there about a Month; in the mean while *Axalla* came with his Troops to the rendezvous at *Ozara*, where he made all things ready for a March, and waited for his Princes orders. He had ſent him the news of the progreſs of *Bajazet*, and of all his proceedings.

Tamerlan had ſent word to the *Muſcovites*, and acquainted them with his intentions to march againſt the *Turks*, requeſting him to ſend him a few Troops. This Prince had heard of the great preparations for War that the *Tartars*

made; he was jealous that they were intended against himself, but he was eas'd of his fears, and rejoyced to hear that *Tamerlan* was marching with his numerous Army against the *Ottoman* Family, whose prodigious growth had given him cause to be afraid. He sent therefore his Embassadours to *Tamerlan*, to offer him in his expedition all the assistance that he desired. The Prince intreated him to send him fifteen thousand Horse with some Monies due to him, and a free passage over his Country. All this was readily granted by the *Czar*, who continued faithful in his Allyance and League with *Tamerlan*.

This dreadful Army of the *Tartarians* caus'd all Men to expect the abasement of the *Ottoman* power, which in a few years was grown dreadful to all the World, and insupportable to all their Neighbours: for this cause, as well as for the Confederacy contracted with the *Paleologues*, *Tamerlan* was resolved to withstand *Bajazet* with all his might. He chose rather to assault him in his new Conquests, than to stay to be assaulted by him in his own Country amongst his people to their unspeakable damage and loss. This wise resolution of *Tamerlan* was intended for these two purposes; first, his Army would live upon the Enemies Country, and spend of his Substance securely; if Fortune should frown upon him there, his own Territories would be never the worse, and he should lose none of them thereby, so that all the advantage would prove to be on his side. Prince *Axalla* was the chief Agent of this Expedition; he govern'd at this time both the Empire and the Emperour. His great Authority,

thority, being a Christian, gave a jealousie and displeasure to several Grandees of the Court; but his discreet Behaviour and obliging Disposition, together with his rare Vertues that appear'd in all the course of his life, and the notable Services that he had perform'd, stopt the mouths of all envious persons, and kept him up in his eminent Station. He was as welcome to the old Emperour as to *Tamerlan* himself, unto whom he cunningly gave the honour of all successes, though his Wisdom and discreet Conduct had the greatest share and hand in bringing them to pass; so that if his Power was great, his Worth and Vertues were answerable. There was never any person more courteous, more affable, more merciful and kind. He incited *Tamerlan* to nothing but to Glorious Actions, to Noble Designs full of Honour; and when they were to be executed, he was always the first man that would adventure his Life and Person, without sparing himself. And though *Tamerlan* had always next to his Person many illustrious Princes and noble Lords, their Glory was darkened by the Splendour and Magnificence of *Axalla*, who exceeded them all in number of Servants, in beautiful Horses, and in a stately and glorious Train. He had a great Soul, adorned with many Vertues, and a Discretion able to maintain his own interest. He never gave any Counsel but he offered himself to put it in execution; in which he always was so happy that all things succeeded to him that he undertook. His Policy appeared chiefly in listening to all persons that had any Errand to him. He would lend an Ear to the meanest with that mild-

ness and Humanity, that never any Person went from him dissatisfied; but he had the art to captivate their affections, and win the hearts of all Men that knew him. One day the Prince check'd him because he was so courteous and kind, and so easily to be spoken with; for which he blamed him before *Alhacent*: But *Axalla* reply'd, *It may become you, my Emperour, to be stately; but I ought to be humble, as your Slave and Servant: Grandeur agrees with your Place, but Humility is my greatest Ornament. I am near your Person, my noble Lord, for no other purpose, but to cause you to be honoured; if therefore you be respected, it is sufficient. It matters not how I behave my self, so I perform my Duty. If I were stately and proud, I should become odious to all the Lords of your Court, and disoblige them so as to think ill of your choice of my Person. I shall desire that they may honour me, not for my sake, but for yours, that your service may be better advanc'd.* This Answer gave a great satisfaction to the Emperour; for he had a particular art to gain the love of every one, and he was respected also more than he desired.

I have, saith Alhacent, *made this little Digression from the History, to give a Description of* Axalla; *because without it many things cannot well be understood in this Relation.*

The Prince sent orders to *Axalla* to come to him to *Samarcande*, to advise about the march of his Troops, and till his return, to leave the Command of the Army with the Prince of *Tanais*. *Axalla* took Post, and in obedience to this Command, went to the Prince: After a serious Debate, it was resolved in Council, that the whole Army

Army ſhould march over the Borders of *Muſcovy*, ſtraight towards *Conſtantinople*, the chief City of *Greece*, whither *Bajazet* with his Army were going apace; for he was in *Aſia Minor*. *Tamerlan* ſent a Relation of *Axalla*, to inform the Emperour *Paleologue* of the coming of his Army; for whoſe ſubſiſtance great ſtores of Proviſions had been laid up in all the conſiderable Cities of the Empire.

Tamerlan therefore, in purſuance of his Expedition, went from *Samarcande* to *Ozara*, where the Rendezvous was appointed of the whole Army. There it was debated again which way to take; that of *Capha*, by the Borders of *Muſcovy*; or the other way, on the other ſide of the *Caſpian* Sea, through the Confines of *Perſia*. At laſt it was reſolved that the Army ſhould march to *Capha*, and from thence to *Trapezantium*, or *Trebiſonde*, through the Borders of the *Georgians*, and enter that way into the Dominions of the *Turks*.

Thus, when Prayers had been ſolemnly offered up to God, to implore his aid and gracious aſſiſtance, for the Prince did put in him his greateſt confidence, the whole Army went ſtraight to *Meravis*; where it abode three days in expectation of the Troops ſent from *Odmar*, who were near at hand, as well as the other Succours coming out of *Muſcovy*.

In this place the Emperour caus'd a General Muſter and Review of all his Army, which was obliged to march twenty Leagues through a Deſart Country, where they found no comfort, not ſo much as a little freſh Water. *Tamerlan* had pro-

provided beforehand for this inconveniency, for he had ordered all the Ships and Veſſels in the Harbours of the *Caſpian* Sea, to attend upon him and the Army, near the Shore. In theſe Ships were Proviſions ſufficient, a great deal of Ammunition, and the moſt part of his Equipage. This foreſight help'd them in ſeaſon, and hinder-ed the Army from meeting with want. In the march the Prince went along the Sea-Coaſt, ſport-ing himſelf in Hunting, or diſcourſing with his Attendants; he was commonly about ten Leagues from the Army, and none came near him but thoſe that carried Proviſions from the Ships. This Army was ſo numerous, that they ſtretch-ed along twenty Leagues into the Country.

When it was come to *Aſtchet*, there the Army went over the River *Edel*, by a Bridge that was there, and two or three more made on purpoſe for a more ſpeedy paſſage. During this time the Prince abode at *Saraſick*, where he underſtood for certain that *Bajazet* was going to beſiege *Conſtantinople*, that he had conquered all *Bythinia* and *Burſa*, the chief City of this Kingdom: that he had commanded it to be well fortified, and many other Towns where he had exercis'd his cruelty upon the Inhabitants: That all the Neigh-bouring Provinces, for fear of him, yielded with-out reſiſtance, and became Tributaries to him. The news that diſpleas'd *Tamerlan* moſt, was, that *Capha* a ſtrong City, where *Axalla* was brought up, and received under his protection at *Axalla*'s requeſt, had followed the Example of the reſt, and opened their Gates to the barbarous Enemy. This unworthy contempt of his Autho-

rity

rity *Tamerlan* was resolved to punish; he sent therefore to summon them to appear before him, and give an account of their revolt from him. The Citizens were troubled at this Message, they apprehended his just indignation, and the punishment due for their Rebellion. They sent therefore some of their Citizens to pacifie his wrath, with many rich Gifts and rare Furs: They promis'd in the name of the rest, that they would never be guilty of any such Crime for the future, but would endeavour to make amends for it by their future behaviour and faithfulness. The Emperour understanding of their true repentance, he pardon'd them for *Axalla*'s sake, unto whom he gave the Soveraignty of the City. *Axalla* went to visit there his Friends and Relations, and settle there a good Order and Government for the security of the place; giving his Citizens to understand that he loved his own Country, and would see to preserve his Country-men. In his way he took *Tana* which belong'd to the *Genoeses*, he recover'd *Achas* and *Lopeso*, three considerable Towns which the Prince bestowed upon *Axalla*, willing him to fortifie them and furnish them with all necessaries.

Some may wonder what moved this *Genoese* Prince, who had refus'd the Government of the Kingdom of *China*, and many considerable Towns, to accept now a small Territory with more satisfaction, and to prefer such narrow Limits to greater Dominions. This discovers that strong affection that we have naturally for the Country where we came first into the World. *Axalla* accepted of this Gift the rather, because he

he might hereafter retire himself in *Capha* in case of necessity. Though he held the second place, and was next to the greatest Monarch of the World, he seem'd thereby to confine all his ambition to this little Territory, and preferr'd a small Portion of the *Caspian* Sea, to a large Compass of Ground limited by *Scythia* and *China*, and all the Countries conquer'd by his Master, though he were well-beloved by the Souldiers, and highly respected by all other Persons.

The Army continued sometimes about *Mechet*, to refresh themselves: The Prince till that time had employed himself in Hunting, having left the whole Command of the Army to *Axalla*; but now he took charge of it himself, and caused it to march forward towards the holy Mountains; where the *Circassians* and *Georgians* sent Ambassadours to him, to offer him their assistance. These People are numerous, all professing the Christian Faith. They have been always Tributaries to the *Roman* Emperour, since the time that they were conquer'd by *Pompey*; before that, they were under the Jurisdiction of *Mithridates*, whom this *Roman* General overcame. They were joyful to receive *Tamerlan*'s Army, because his design was to free the *Grecian* Empire from the Tyranny of the *Ottoman* Family. *Axalla* perswaded a great many of that Country to joyn themselves with the Army, for they are noted for their courage and strength. They are a sort of People, tall, well-set Bodies, and very Warlike; they have often resisted the Power of the *Turks*, partly by their stoutness, and partly by the scituation of their Country, which is Craggy

and

and Mountainous. At the first noise of War they burn their Houses, and waste the Country; so that they are able to withstand by that means the Assaults of a powerful Enemy. The Emperour was well pleased to behold these proper Men with their long Hair, and took a delight to understand their Warlike Dispositions and Actions. Therefore he gave an expres's Command, That his Army should not do any injury to that Country. They were at that time part of the Empire of *Trapezuntium*, which belonged to *Greece*. The Prince was received every-where with Honour, and his Army supplyed with Provisions, as much as could be desired here. It was reported for certain, That *Constantinople* was besieged by *Bajazet*, who, with a very powerful Army, was set down before it, and kept in the Emperour *Paleologue*: and that all his Dominions were in a great danger to be lost. The *Turkish* Prince could not believe that *Tamerlan* dared oppose his Designs. Therefore when the fame of the *Tartarian* Armies coming spread about amongst his Souldiers, he forbid, by his Proclamation, any person so much as to mention the *Tartarian* Army; so highly did his proud mind despise and contemn it. All the Inhabitants of the Country, where this Army pass'd, prais'd the Souldiery, and wish'd them all happiness, because they were orderly, quiet, peaceable, and just in their dealings: If a Souldier had stole but an Apple, he was sure to dye for it without Mercy.

This severity was observed in all the March, because this expedition was undertaken for no other purpose but to deliver these people from the fears

fears and ſlavery of the *Turks*, and force proud *Bajazet* to liſten to ſome reaſon. In this order the Army came to *Bachichich*, where it ſtopt to take ſome refreſhment eight days. There the Embaſſadors of *Guines*, a Man highly eſteem'd for his Holineſs, met the Prince. They offered him, in their Maſters name, all the help and aſſiſtance that he could deſire or want in this expedition; they brought him ſome beautiful Horſes, and aſſur'd him, in their Maſter's name, that he ſhould ſucceed in his deſigns, for *Guines* was a learned Aſtrologer and a Prophet in thoſe Parts. The Emperour declar'd to them, That he thought himſelf honoured by their coming in Embaſſy from ſuch a Prince, therefore he ſent a rich Preſent of rare Furs, and ſome Golden Plate.

Here at *Bachichich* he muſtered and viewed his Army, and gave them all their Pay, both Horſe and Foot, exhorting them to behave themſelves valiantly. It was his conſtant practice to do ſo at ſuch times. He caus'd them alſo to exerciſe themſelves with feigned Fights, that they might be more expert and keep their order; he was very careful of this, which he recommended always to his Captains. In thoſe days every private ſouldier had the liberty to behold their Emperour with more confidence than at other times; for the Prince gave them acceſs, and ſeem'd to caſt off the Majeſty and State which at other times hinder'd their approach, that he might converſe the more familiarly with them, and encourage them to be brave and couragious.

At the departure of the Army from *Bachichich*, it conſiſted of three hundred thouſand Horſe, and

and five hundred thousand Foot of several Nations. *Tamerlan* had heard how the *Turks* had conquered all *Greece*; he imagined therefore, That as soon as *Bajazet* should hear of their approach he would depart out of *Asia* into *Europe* for his security, as Wisdom and Reason oblig'd him, had he been well-advised: but his Pride and Presumption caus'd him to take a contrary course to all the Rules of the Art of War; for as soon as *Tamerlan's* Army was at *Buisabuich*, beyond the Country of the *Georgians*, *Axalla* left the Van, which he commanded to ride back to the Prince, to acquaint him with Tydings that he knew would please him, That *Bajazet* had left the siege of *Constantinople*, and was marching with all diligence to protect the Countries of *Asia*; That he intended to fight him, and that for that purpose he had sent for all the Troops that were in *Greece*, and gathered all the Souldiers that he could possibly get from all Parts. He did not trust so much to their Numbers, as to the Courages, Boldness, Skill and Experience of his *Janisaries*, who had been train'd up in War, and knew not what it is to flye away. The Emperour was joyful at this news, but not insolent; for he foresaw the Event of a Battel, and confessed, That a small number well-govern'd and bravely led on, is able to carry away the Victory from a more numerous Army.

Three days he stop'd at *Buisabuich* whiles his Troops were drawing towards *Euphrates*, that they might pass over that River and live in the Enemies Country, and ease that of the Confederates. Here the Prince sent an Express to

the

the Emperour, his Uncle, to inform him of the raising of the siege of *Constantinople*, and of the resolution of the *Turks*, to fight him in a pitch'd Battle. He intreated him, not knowing certainly the hazard of War, to prevent the worst, and give order that the Borders of the Empire might be well-guarded and secured with Souldiers: That the Cavalry might be always ready with their Horses, because the Neighbouring people, who are wont to fawn upon the Conquerour in his prosperity, change their minds, insult, and labour to spoil them when Fortune begins to frown. Therefore wise Princes, when they are ready to adventure their Army in a considerable Battle, always labour to secure the entry of their Dominions, for fear that victorious Enemy, in pursuance of his advantage, should deprive him of the power of recovering his loss by winning from him his Country. This was *Tamerlan*'s constant practice in such occasions: He was more careful to call upon his people, and advise them to provide for their defence, than to send them notice of his Victory.

The Army left *Buisabuich*, after that a Council of War had been held of the chief Officers and noblest Persons, whom the Prince was wont to call together to propose his designs, and desire their advice. By this means he won their Affections, which he knew how to reward: such persons as were the fartheſt from him did sometimes receive Testimonies and Marks of his goodness and of his esteem, with which he honoured them, in the places where the Army continued a while, and when it was at a stand: But chiefly

chiefly the Officers of Forraign Nations and of his Allies did often receive expreſſions of his bounty. He did frequently invite them to eat at his Table, where he did converſe with them in a very obliging manner, ſetting aſide for a while all gravity and incommodious reſervedneſs. Amongſt theſe ſtrangers the Lord of *Vaucheſu*, a *Chineſe* was one of the moſt eſteemed and honoured by him: He often ſaid, That the Vertue and Courage of *Axalla*, together with the Affection of this Lord, had made him Maſter of one of the nobleſt Kingdoms of *Aſia*. Therefore to ſhew how thankful he was, the Prince had him often near his perſon, and diſcours'd with him concerning the Cuſtomes and Manners of the People, through whoſe Country they march'd. This Lord brought with him ſome Troops out of *China*, which kept company with the reſt of the Army, and obſerved the ſame Order and Diſcipline.

Thus the Army arrived at *Garga*, where it paſs'd over the River *Euphrates*; the Van having gone over before at *Chinſerig*. The Rendezvous of the whole Army was appointed at *Gianich*, which was ſurrendred at the firſt ſummons. There *Tamerlan* underſtood, That *Bajazet* was within thirty Leagues of that place, which caus'd the *Tartars* to march more warily and more compact together. The greateſt part of the Cities and Towns in the way were yielded up into the Prince's Hands, who treated them very kindly; but thoſe that offered to reſiſt were ſeverely puniſh'd, if the Inhabitants were *Turks*; but the *Chriſtians* were commonly pardoned and ſet at liberty, for the ſake of the Emperour *Emanuel*

Paleologue, whom the Prince was resolved to gratifie in all things. *Axalla*, according to his orders, caused them to take an Oath of Allegiance to this Prince, whom he intended to re-establish in possession of his whole Empire, and punish his dreadful Enemy, whose ambition carried him to attempt the ruine and destruction of the once flourishing Empire of *Greece*, without minding how much the *Tartars* were obliged to defend it.

This War undertaken by *Tamerlan*, against him who was commonly called the *Thunder-bolt of Heaven*, could not have a more just and reasonable ground; for besides the horrid Cruelties that he committed upon both Sexes, he endeavoured to take away the Empire from a Confederate Prince, under a pretence of pacifying the troubles, and rob one who had never offended him. He often flattered him with fair promises which he never fulfill'd, so that he had reduc'd him to that extremity, that of a large Empire, he had only a few small Towns remaining to him about *Constantinople*, unto which he had laid Siege. This undertaking therefore of *Tamerlan* was very honourable, to free this Emperour from an apparent Tyranny and Oppression; and to pluck out of the unmerciful Hands of so barbarous an Enemy, a flourishing Empire, and the most Magnificent City of the World. In the prosecution of so honourable a design, he expected with good reason, the blessing and assistance of the great God of Hosts.

In this little digression, I have thought fit to shew the greatness of his courage that led, and inclined him naturally to help the feeble, oppressed with unlawful Powers; and to oblige the proud

proud to listen to reason, in imitation of God, unto whom all Soveraigns should endeavour to be like.

The Army left *Granich* with joy, and assurance of success. *Axalla*, who Commanded the Van, sent before *Chianson*, Prince of *Carran*, with four thousand *Parthian* Horse, to learn some certain news of the Enemy. He commanded to destroy all places thereabouts with Fire and Sword, and to bring him word where *Bajazet* was, and what manner of Country was beyond *Samas*. This Captain, who was highly esteem'd in the Army, and Commanded in *Axalla's* absence the Van-Guard, sent before his Party five hundred Horse, Commanded by a *Parthian* Captain, who had not gone above ten Leagues but he had news of the Enemy; for as soon as he had surpris'd *Samas*, he was told that the *Turkish* Army was at *Taraya*, in their march to meet *Tamerlan*. *Axalla* sent notice of this to the Prince, who commanded him to keep the place till the *Turks* were come up, and to let him understand every hour all the news that he could learn. *Tamerlan* had no desire to march any further, because he was already in a large and spacious Field, fit for a Battel. He was forc'd to precaution himself, and take care of his great business; because he had to do with a War-like People us'd to fight against Christians, a cunning People that want nothing to manage the business of War. He consider'd therefore, that though his Army was more numerous than his Enemies, it was compos'd of many Nations, who were to be govern'd with discretion; for they were then to fight, not with the *Chinese*, a delicate and effeminate People; but with

true Souldiers, who had no other hopes but in Victory. Therefore the Prince forgot nothing that might be useful to him, and help him in his business; for that purpose he sent *Axalla* to take a view of the Ground unto which he intended to draw *Bajazet*, to have his advice whether it were fit for a Battel. It is scituated between the Sea, or the *Pontus Euxinus* and *Gianich*, near *Sannas*: on the one hand it is bounded by a little River that runs into *Euphrates*. He sent him word again, to have a care to keep *Sannas* as long as he could; and that in case they could not keep it, they should set Fire to the Houses and burn it, that the Enemy might not stop there, but advance towards the Plain where he was resolved to expect him, because he was stronger than *Bajazet* in Horse.

At last *Bajazet*'s great Army, incourag'd with the hopes of victory and a desire to engage, began to assault the *Tartars* in *Sannas*; but the greatest part of them were gone, only some hundreds of Horse having kindled the Fire, at the Enemy's approach fled with all speed in some disorder.

The Prince of *Ciarcan* having divided his Party into two Bodies, and given special order to the first, that as soon as they should see the hundred Horse issue out of *Sannas* and fly away, that they should receive them and retreat behind him; for he had Posted himself in a Valley with the other Body of Horse, near a Wood, from whence he saw two thousand *Turkish* Horse, the Scouts of their Army, pass by him. He charg'd them in the Rear, so speedily, and with that courage; that when they saw themselves so briskly assaulted and had not the time to look about,

they

they yielded and fought but faintly; retreating, many of them were killed, and taken Prisoners. This was the first Encounter between the *Turks* and *Tartars*, wherein the Victory fell to the latter. All the Prisoners were sent to *Tamerlan*, and amongst them the Bassa of *Natolia*, their Commander. The Prince spoke to him, and ask'd him what had caused *Bajazet* to forget himself so strangely, as not to regard him, and to despise his Army; that he hoped that in a few days he should find one that would bring down his pride, and make him more tractable. The Bassa answer'd, that his Lord was the Son of the World, that he could not endure a Partner; and that for his part, he had good cause to wonder at *Tamerlan* for undertaking so long and dangerous an Expedition, to stop the Progress of his Prince's good successes, whom Heaven favour'd, and to whom all the World yielded obedience; and that there was no discretion in him to withstand him. *Nay*, said Tamerlan, *I am sent and appointed by God, to chastise this proud Man, and to teach him that Insolency deserves the vengeance of Heaven; and that God delights as much to abase the proud, as to raise the humble Souls: That the raising of the Siege of* Constantinople *was a beginning of his success against his Master. And thou mayst*, said he, *though I pity thy misfortune, understand what a difference there is between my* Parthian *Horse, and that of* Bajazet's. *But, thinkest thou that thy Master will fight with me?* The Bassa reply'd, *He desires nothing more passionately.* Afterwards he fell down at *Tamerlan's* Feet, with these words; *Noble Prince, I intreat you, suffer me, out of your generosity, to assist my Prince that day. Tamerlan* soon yielding to

his Requeſt, anſwered in this manner; *Go and tell thy Maſter that thou haſt ſeen me, and that I ſhall be in Fight in that place where there ſhall be a green Flag hung out.* The Baſſa ſurpriſed with ſuch a noble Grant, promis'd him, when he took his leave, that next to his Lord and Maſter, there was no Perſon in the World that he would ſerve with more affection, and ſooner than him.

At his return to the *Turkiſh* Army, he told *Bajazet* all the diſcourſe that he had with *Tamerlan*, and chiefly he told what he had wiſh'd him to ſay to him. *We ſhall underſtand all theſe things very ſhortly*, reply'd Bajazet, *and before I have done, I will make him repent of his folly.* The Baſſa acknowledg'd the favour that he had received from *Tamerlan*, and publiſh'd every-where his Grandeur and Goodneſs; extolling highly his Generoſity in giving him a very beautiful Horſe, though he knew that he would uſe him in fighting againſt him. The next day the *Turkiſh* Army marched two Leagues, to come in ſight of the *Tartars*, who were at Even about a League diſtant from it, expecting the day following, in which the great Diſpute was to be. The Night was not very peaceable, the noiſe of Men, and the neighing of Horſes filled the Air, and cauſed every one to deſire the return of the Sun, to give liberty to their courages to act in this Field of *Mars*. The *Scythians*, that love Prey and Plunder, were encourag'd by their Leaders, to behave themſelves valiantly, in hopes of the rich Spoils which the Victory would deliver into their Hands. The *Parthians*, who were ambitious of the glory and honour of their Nation, were obliged to do their uttermoſt endeavour to overcome the

Turks,

Turks, who alone were able to diſpute with them for the Empire of *Aſia*. The *Chriſtians*, who were very numerous in the *Tartarian* Army, for they were near the fourth part, were animated with a hatred againſt their mortal Enemy whoſe defeat would prove the liberty of *Greece*. In this manner, in the night, the ſeveral Nations encourag'd one another according to their ſeveral diſpoſitions. The Prince walk'd about his Camp in the night, hearkening to their Diſcourſes which rejoyced his heart becauſe they had a certain aſſurance of obtaining the Victory.

Alhacent walk'd along with him: The Prince told him, That the night before his Fight with the *Muſcovites*, his Camp was full of Songs of Triumph and Rejoycings, and that none of the Souldiers could ſleep, which caus'd him to be perſwaded of the Victory he obtain'd: *I ſee*, ſaid he, *the ſame preſage now of the next days happineſs and ſucceſs*. When he had gone round his Camp he return'd to his Tent, at the end of the ſecond Watch, and laid himſelf down upon a Carpet to take a little reſt, but could not ſleep, for he was impatient to ſee the appearance of the next day. In the mean whiles he commanded *Alhacent* to bring him the Book, which he commonly read, containing the Hiſtories of the Actions of his Forefathers, and the worthy deeds of the moſt famous men of his Country. He lighted, in opening of the Book, upon the Relation of a great Battel which his Grand-father loſt, fighting againſt the *Perſians*, which he thought before to win, and had got it, had he not attacked them indiſcreetly, and neglected the advantages that were offered him, truſting too

much to his own and his peoples Courages. He commanded *Alhacem* to read over that passage once more, with this saying, *I read often this description of that Battel before I engage in a fight, that I might not trust so much to my Lyons Skin, that I neglect the use of the Foxes Tail to cover my head; That this fault of my Grand-father, in leaving his advantagious ground, against the advice and intreaties of his Servants, to assault an Enemy in his Trenches, might cause me to be more wary and cautious.* A little after he ask'd whether it were day, and sent for his great *Chamberlain* to cause the Trumpet to sound, that his Horses might be made ready: He rested himself a little longer, and ask'd for *Axalla*, who came to him with several other Lords and chief Officers of his Army. He advis'd with them what was best to observe, and took Horse, sending them all to their several Commands. Immediately after news came to him, That the *Turks* were drawing near, and entring into the Field. He was very desirous to see them in their march, that he might be better able to order his Army according to that manner. He moved them from the place where he stood, sending before three thousand Horse to begin a light skirmish, whiles he appointed to every one his Rank and Place.

In this view of the Enemy he had taken notice, That the *Turkish* Infantry, named *Janisaries*, kept the middle, having upon each Wing two Bodies of Horse, amounting to about thirty thousand, and that there was another Body that went before and covered all the Foot. This order seem'd to him very strong, and not easie to be broken. *I was once resolved*, said he to *Axalla*,

to fight on foot, but now I see I must be on Horse-back to encourage my men to break through that great Body of Janisaries, *which I shall suffer, advance as far as they please. I will have fifty thousand Foot on each Wing, and forty thousand Horse of my best Cavalry in the middle; behind them there shall be fifty thousand Horse in three Bodies, which you shall command, and I will follow and second you with fourscore thousand Horse more, where I intend to be in person; behind me I will have one hundred thousand Foot, who shall march in two Battalions; the Reer shall be composed of forty thousand Horse, and fifty thousand Foot, who shall not strike a stroke till I shall want them. The reserve shall be ten thousand of my stoutest Horse, whom I will send to the places that shall have most need.*

The Prince of *Ciarcan*, a famous Commander of great worth, led the first forty thousand Horse. The Lord *Synopes*, a *Genoese*, and Relation of *Axalla*, his Lieutenant-General of the Infantry, a Captain of a great Reputation, was at the Head of the first Infantry; Prince *Axalla* followed him with fifty thousand Horse.

Bajazet's Army seem'd to be very beautiful and numerous, marching towards the *Tartars*, who stood to their Ground without stirring; only some single Troops, *Scythians* and *Muscovites* went sometimes between the two Armies to skirmish a little; but these boldFellows performed nothing of consequence for the winning of the Victory.

At that moment a Spy was taken who inform'd *Tamerlan*, That *Bajazet*, who was then on Horse-back, encouraging his Men, intended to fight that day amongst his *Janisaries* a-foot. These

Jani-

Janisaries are certain brave and faithful Souldiers, brought up from their Infancy in Feats of Armes, and chosen out of all the Christian Nations; beautiful and strong of Body, and of a good Constitution. They are train'd up from their Child-hood together, and are esteem'd invincible. They fight for their Prince and Lord with a strange resolution, in the form of a Half-Moon about his Person: They were then about thirty thousand in number. *Bajazet* confided most in them, not regarding the rest of his Infantry, which was numerous; for they were People gathered together from several places. He had a brave Company of Horse, about one hundred and forty thousand, very well experienced in all manner of Fights. He had also above thirty thousand *Mamelukes*, very good Horsemen; and forty thousand Foot, sent to him from the Souldan of *Egypt* to help him. So that his Army seem'd to be as great as *Tamerlan*'s, which stood closer together and march'd in several Lines; whereas *Bajazet*'s had but one, and appear'd in one Front: It march'd on with a great noise, and grievous threatnings; whereas *Tamerlan*'s Army observed a great silence, in expectation of the Signal.

As soon as publick Prayers were ended, the Emperour appear'd in the Van, to be witness of the first On-set, causing *Axalla* to advance forward; he himself returned to his resolved Station, when he had called upon every one to behave themselves well. It is not to be imagin'd how furiously the *Turks* assaulted the Prince of *Ciarcan*, who had orders not to fight until the Enemy were in their march, and had begun to attack him. The place was a large Plain of a vast extent,

extent, where the advantage was equal for both Parties; only there was a River on *Tamerlan*'s left hand, which he look'd upon as a benefit to his Army; so that he gave an expreſs and a ſtrict Command, not to ſuffer the *Turks* to take it from them, becauſe of that ſide which he eſteem'd the beſt for his Men to fight. It was always his Practiſe in War, to ſuffer his Enemy to begin the Encounter; therefore he ordered the Commanders of his Van-Guard to ſtay till the Enemy did firſt aſſault them. In the mean while the Prince of *Cicrcan*, with his forty thouſand Horſe, was almoſt overthrown. He did all that could have been expected from a great courage, and a judicious Commander: He broke into the middle of the *Janiſaries*, where *Bajazet* was, and diſorder'd them; but his valour, that overturn'd all things in his way, was ſoon ſtop'd with an Arrow that ſtruck him to the heart. At that time *Axalla* went on with his Men; and charg'd one of the Enemies Wings, where he meeting with no great reſiſtance cut them all to pieces. His Infantry came then up to him, according to appointment, and with it he aſſaulted the *Janiſaries*. The Prince conſidering the difficult Task that *Axalla* was to have, ſent him ten thouſand Horſe out of his Body; as well to favour the rallying of ſuch as ſhould be diſorder'd, as to charge a Body of Foot which were marching on to help the *Janiſaries*, who behaved themſelves gallantly for the glory and ſafety of their Prince. The Fight laſted a full hour before any Perſon did offer to retreat. The *Turks* and the *Parthians*, with a wonderful obſtinacy, killed one another in heaps: Men and Horſes covered the Ground, in their

Gore

Gore-Blood, lying one upon another. Here you might have ſeen ſome falling dead upon thoſe that they had newly kill'd: There you might have beheld ſome breathing out their laſt Gaſp with threatning looks. In every place were heard lamentations, groans, and the cryes of the wounded and dying Souldiers. The Prince beheld this fight patiently, looking for the end; but when he perceived that his Men decreas'd, and ſeem'd to be too weak, he ſent ten thouſand Horſe to ſecond the ten thouſand appointed for the Reſerve, and commanded them to fall on as ſoon as they ſhould ſee that need requir'd. In the mean while the Emperour enter'd into the Battel with his Party, and broke through all that ſtood in his way; and the Infantry, Commanded by the Prince of *Tanais*, advanc'd and aſſaulted the *Janiſaries* where *Bajazet* was yet in Perſon. They found no eaſie work to overthrow them; but when the Emperour had again charged them the ſecond time, and followed by his Reer, he overcame them rather by his number than by valour or courage; for they performed all that could be expected from brave Men: but ſo many Onſets one upon the Neck of another, by freſh Souldiers, oppreſs'd them.

Bajazet forſook this Body of *Janiſaries*, and took Horſe, wounded, but he fell into the Hands of *Axalla*; unto whom he yielded himſelf Priſoner, thinking he had been *Tamerlan*. He was at firſt taken for ſome great Lord of the *Turkiſh* Army. Twenty thouſand of the *Tartars* never acted, but after the Fight in purſuit of the flying Enemy, whom they kill'd by heaps. The Prince had his Horſe run through, and kill'd with a Lance;

Lance; but he was quickly mounted again. One may justly say, that his Conduct alone won the Victory; for had his Army ingag'd all at once, they had been in that strange confusion that might have overthrown them: but his cunning to weary the *Turks* in fighting, and recruit his own Parties when they were in want, got him the Victory. Threescore thousand Men were kill'd of the *Turks*, and about twenty thousand *Tartars*. The Prince of *Carcan*, and the Captain of the *Georgians* both lost their Lives, to the great sorrow of the whole Army. *Calibes*, that brave Commander, who brought up the Reer, was vex'd to meet with such small resistance, and to have had so little hand in the Action. The *Despot* of *Servia*, a Christian, who fought for *Bajazet*, was taken Prisoner; every one prais'd him for having well behaved himself that day. The prince received him very kindly, after that he had blamed him for serving *Bajazet*, against him that intended nothing but to assist and set at liberty his Emperour. The *Despot* answered, That what he had done was not out of Duty, or Inclination for the good of *Bajazet*; but only for fear of losing his Dominions, which he saw were exposed to the ambition, and at the mercy of him, to whom all the World before seem'd to yield obedience. *Tamerlan*, pretty well satisfied with this excuse, gave him his freedom to depart when he thought convenient. The Emperour had a great care to secure *Bajazet*'s Children, and to cause their Father to be cured of his Wounds; afterwards he commanded him to be brought before him: *Bajazet* shewed no sign of humility. The Prince seem'd to be displeas'd at his proud carriage; he

told

told him therefore, That his Life depended upon his will, and with a word-ſpeaking he could take it from him; *Speake the word, I intreat thee*, reply'd Bajazet; *for it will be my greateſt happineſs. How comeſt thou*, ſaid Tamerlan to him, *to be ſo bold, to take away the Empire from the Prince of* Greece? *The deſire of glory*, anſwer'd Bajazet, *and of enlarging my Kingdom. But wherefore*, ſaid the Prince, *doſt thou commit ſo many Cruelties, and uſe thy conquered Subjects ſo barbarouſly, as to ſpare neither Age nor Sex? I act thus*, anſwered he, *to terrifie mine Enemies the more. For the ſame Reaſon*, replyd'd the Prince, *thou ſhalt be treated in the ſame manner.* With that he ſent him away, and turned to his Commanders; *Behold*, ſaid he, *a proud and haughty Man, that deſerves to be puniſh'd and made an Example, to all ſuch cruel and barbarous People as he is. I confeſs God hath this day ſubdued, and put in my power, a great Enemy; I am bound to return him thanks.* Afterwards he ſent for *Bajazet*'s Children to be brought to him, he ſeem'd to pity their misfortune, and commanded them to be civilly and courteouſly treated, as the Children of a great Monarch. He commanded next that, to bury the dead. The Body of the Prince of *Ciarcan* was found amongſt the *Janiſaries*, where he was ingag'd; *Tamerlan* expreſs'd a great deal of ſorrow for the loſs of this young Prince, who was his Kinſman, and likely to do him great ſervice. A great number of Captains were killed this day, and almoſt all the Officers of the *Turks*, for the Fight was fierce and bloody; for the Fight continued from ſeven a Clock in the Morning, till four in the Afternoon; and then it was not well known who ſhould win the Victory.

On

On the third day after the Fight the Army march'd away, for the first was employed in burying the dead, every one render'd that Duty to their Friends and Kindred. The Body of the Prince of *Ciarcan* was Embalmed, and conducted with a Guard of two thousand Horse to *Samarcande*, to be there kept till the Emperour's return. The other Corpses were buried in *Samas*, with honour. *Axalla* was grieved for the death of his Kinsman, a brave bold and couragious young Man, well beloved of the Prince: His Command was given to his Brother, who shewed then great signs of a noble courage.

Albacent saith, That he could not but make that day a Reflexion upon the unconstancy and vanity of worldly things, sufficiently represented in this Battel. At the beginning *Bajazet*, the dreadful Emperour of the *Turks*, thought himself above all changes of Fortune, having met with nothing on Earth able to withstand his Power; but a few hours after he is cast down, and with a blow his flourishing Estate overthrown when he least expected it. This caused him to confess since, that he had been deservedly punished for having despised great Armies, and placed all his confidence in the valour of his Horsemen, and of his *Janisaries* He was three days as it were in a despairing condition, fretting and tormenting himself; he sought to kill himself, and called for Death to deliver him out of his Captivity. *Tamerlan*, who was the mildest, the most courteous and compassionate Prince, yet could he not be perswaded to pity him; for he dealt with him as with a furious Beast, so that when he mounted upon his Horse, upon solemn Festivals,

Baja-

Bajazet was brought to him that his Shoulder might ſerve him as a ſtep to leap upon his Horſe. This he did not out of any Oſtentation, but only to humble *Bajazet*, and diſcover to him the folly of Men; who ſeek in themſelves, and not in God, all their greatneſs and confidence.

The next day the Army marched the way that leads to *Burſa*, whither the ſad remains of *Bajazet*'s Army were fled, under the Command of Baſſa *Muſtapha*. All the Country through which *Tamerlan* paſs'd, ſubmitted. He commanded all the Fortreſſes to be demoliſh'd, and puniſh'd ſeverely thoſe that offered to withſtand him and endure a Siege.

Tamerlan had caus'd ſeveral Priſ'ners to be led in Chains after the Body of the Prince of *Ciarcan* to *Samarcande*: He intended to enlarge that City, and increaſe the Inhabitants; that it might be a Teſtimony of his Glory, and a Monument of his Grandeur to future Ages. For that purpoſe he had caus'd many *Chineſes*, taken in the former Battels, to be carried thither, and ſome he had invited out of *Pekin* and *Quanton*. This famous Battel that overthrew *Bajazet* filled all his Subjects with fears, and obliged them to ſubmit to the Conquerour. Nothing was able to reſiſt *Tamerlan*, till he arrived with his Army before *Burſa*, whither his defeated Troops were fled and ſhut up, with two of his Male Children, very young. In the mean while *Axalla* advanc'd forward, with forty thouſand Horſe, and an hundred thouſand Foot without any incumbrance, or Baggage: with them he hinder'd the Enemy from rallying, and made a terrible deſtruction of the *Turks*; freeing the *Grecians* from the Tyranny of the *Ot-*

tomans

toman Family. At last he came to the Walls of *Bursa*, from whence all that were able to fly away were gone. The two Children of *Bajazet* were sent to the *Greek* Emperour, to be Educated and brought up. The rest of the *Turks* were fled to *Gallipoli*, and passed over to *Adrianople*, a City which they had taken from the *Greeks*.

But to return to *Tamerlan*, he had dispatch'd to the Emperour his Uncle, and the Empress his Wife, one of his most trusty Servants, named *Lieban*, who was as the first Gentleman of his Chamber, to carry them the joyful news of the Victory, which was far more glorious than any that he had ever gain'd before: He sent them also the Bow and Cymitar of *Bajazet*, and the Trappings of his Horse, which were valued at above two hundred thousand Ducats.

Lieban was mighty welcome to the old Emperour, and the young Empress; chiefly when they understood that the whole World render'd Homage to *Tamerlan*, who nevertheless received all these advantages from the hand of God, without growing insolent or proud: When Providence favour'd him most, he seem'd to be mildest and most courteous. He was never rough but immediately before a Battel, that he might thereby deliver his Orders with more State and Majesty. None could describe his temper in an adverse Fortune, for he had always Prosperity to favour him. But it is commonly seen, that those whom good successes cannot puff up with pride, are not cast down in adversity.

When he had given these needful Orders, he marched to *Bursa*, loaden with the Spoils of his

Enemies; which yet increaſed daily, by the ſurrender of many Towns that were yielded up to him. He treated them all as he had done the Cities of *China*, where the Inhabitants, that brought him their Keys and ſubmitted, were kindly uſed; but thoſe that refuſed to yield were cruelly puniſh'd: for it is wiſdom in a Conquerour to treat the People in that manner.

In the March of the Army, news were brought that *Axalla* had taken *Burſa*, and capitulated with the Citizens in the Emperour's Name; but the Garriſon had been driven out by the Inhabitants, and cut in pieces. *Axalla* ſent the Prince word of the coming of a ſolemn Embaſſie, from *Emanuel* the *Greek* Emperour, of the moſt illuſtrious Perſons of his Court; but that he had hinder'd them from advancing further until *Tamerlan* ſhould ſend him order. He wiſhed them to ſtay where they were, commanding them to be well treated till *Tamerlan*'s arrival; which happen'd a few days after. All the Inhabitants went out to meet him with their Heads uncovered, to ſignifie their ſubmiſſion and ſubjection to him. He was carried in great Pomp and Glory: *Axalla* met him alſo with the Embaſſadours, whom the Prince received very honourably and courteouſly, ſhewing before them his Glory and Magnificence. He led them about his Army, which in a Camp appear'd as a great City. All manner of Proviſions were brought into it every day from all Parts; for there was an admirable Order obſerved.

Theſe Embaſſadours had Orders from the *Greek* Emperour, *Emanuel*, to offer and yield up his Empire

pire and Perſon to the Prince's pleaſure; to hold his Dominions, he and his Poſterity after him, as his Vaſſals and Subjects. The Embaſſadours were alſo Commiſſioned to tell him, That he offer'd him all his good, as due to him, for the great benefit he had received by the deliverance from the cruelleſt Tyrant of the World; whatſoever therefore that he would ſend for, he ſhould have. That he was ſo much oblig'd to *Tamerlan* for his pains and great labours in ſo long and tedious an Expedition, and for the Blood of ſo many thouſands of his Subjects, that he could not poſſibly requite him, but by yielding himſelf and all his People into his Hands. That he engag'd himſelf, and promis'd to ſerve him and obey him faithfully. That ſo many rare Vertues and excellent Qualities, which had render'd his Name famous to all the World, had won his heart and affections. That he deſired earneſtly to ſee him in his chief City, to put it into his power, and yield him up the Empire of *Greece*; where he intreated him that he might continue, only that he might oblige his People to be more obedient to his Orders.

After this Audience, the Embaſſadours expected nothing leſs, but that they ſhould fall under a new Maſter. What they had offer'd, ſo great and ſo delicate a thing, to ſuch a Conquerour as *Tamerlan*, that it was not to be refuſed. All that they deſired was, that their offers might be accepted kindly and civilly. But the Prince's Anſwer to their Meſſage, cauſed them quickly to change their minds and their thoughts of him; for, with a mild and courteous ſpeech, he told them; That he was not come ſo far, and had not

taken that pains, to ſubdue new Kingdoms and Empires: That the advantage to be expected thereby could not make him amends for the greatneſs of his labours and dangers: That the Motive which had oblig'd him to act and undertake this Enterpriſe, was more noble and more worthy of *Tamerlan*; for he purpoſed to himſelf no other benefit but glory and honour, and to render his Name famous to the ſucceeding Ages all over the World: That he deſir'd them to underſtand, that he was there only to aſſiſt the Emperour, *Emanuel*, as his Friend and Ally, and at his requeſt; and that his deſigns had ſucceeded well, becauſe God had bleſſed his juſt intentions: that he knew very well, that by the help and aſſiſtance of the Almighty, rather than by the Multitude of his Souldiers, he had overthrown the Power of the cruelleſt Enemy of Mankind: That it was his deſire to re-eſtabliſh the ancient Family of the *Paleologues* in the full and free poſſeſſion of the *Greekiſh* Empire, of all their Rights and Priviledges, and in a peaceable enjoyment of the City of *Conſtantinople*; that he might render thereby his Name the more famous: That he ſcorn'd that any Perſon ſhould ſay of him hereafter, that he had falſified his Faith, prejudic'd his Honour; and that under Colour of helping his Friend and Ally, he had taken from him his Empire and Eſtate: That he deſired the Services that he had render'd to the Emperour *Emanuel*, might never be forgotten by his Poſterity, and that they might acknowledge them with thanks: And that for his part, he was fully ſatisfied with the honour and glory of the ſucceſs alone, without

out any other benefit. He told them also, That it concern'd the Emperour *Emanuel* to take such a course at present, and give such Orders, that his Army's presence might secure his Interest for the future, and settle his Empire in peace, so as that he might have no cause to fear a relapse into the same danger as before. That he would commit the two Sons of *Bajazet* into his Hands, to treat them according as he should judge most convenient; and that he advis'd him to be more circumspect and careful in the choice of his Ministers, that he might not be mis-led; and that he intreated him to value and esteem his friendship, which should never fail him in time of need.

It is not to be imagin'd how joyful the Embassadours were, to hear this courteous and generous Speech from the Prince's Mouth; to refuse a large and rich Empire, and the most stately and magnificent City of the World; few Princes would have had that extraordinary moderation. But it is not to be expected that many *Tamerlans* should live in these corrupt Ages.

Axalla had Orders to treat and feast the Embassadours, and to shew them all the honour and courtesie possible. One of them was sent with all speed, to carry news to his Master of their successful Embassie, which had proved more prosperous than could have been expected. When therefore the *Greek* Emperour had understood fully the the truth, the whole City was transported with joy, the Churches were throng'd with Votaries; and there was nothing to be seen every where, but Bone-Fires, feastings, and a publick rejoycing of all the People, that extoll'd *Tamerlan's*

lan's Name, and prais'd him for his wonderful moderation. The *Greek* Emperour called his Council, to consult whether it were not convenient for him to go and meet *Tamerlan*, and express to him his thanks Personally, for all his favours and labours. It was resolved that he should, without delay, go in Person. *Tamerlan* understanding of this intent, seem'd to be very joyful. He commanded *Axalla* to meet the Emperour, the first day of his departure, to assure him that *Tamerlan* would look upon it as a very great honour, and would be mighty glad to see him in the City of *Bursa*. When the *Greekish* Emperour was near the Gates, the Prince went to meet him, and received him in great State and Pomp. They were together one whole day, which was spent in expressions of kindness, affection, and acknowledgment, which they exchang'd one with the other. The next day the *Greekish* Emperour departed out of the City, and the Prince accompanied him with the same obliging and noble manner as he had received him. After his departure *Tamerlan* discover'd an inclination to see the famous City of *Constantinople*, which was then look'd upon as the Wonder of the World; but he desired to go *incognito*, that he might avoid all jealousies and fears. *Axalla* mannag'd this business so secretly, that the Prince's departure was not known. He was there received by the Emperour *Emanuel*, without Ceremony, as a private Person: But he endeavoured by all possible means, to satisfie *Tamerlan*'s curiosity, and to shew him all the Rarities of the City: every day he entertain'd him with new delights and satisfactions.

He

He was the more pleas'd, becauſe he was known to none but to thoſe unto whom he deſired to diſcover himſelf; for he and all his Train were clothed in *Greekiſh* Habits. Therefore, when he was gone, the Citizens were ſurpris'd to hear that *Tamerlan* had been to ſee their City. The *Greek* Emperour had ſhewn him all the pleaſant Gardens, and beautiful Palaces that ſtand near the Sea, about a league or two round the City. They walk'd together as two private Perſons: Thus they ſpent five or ſix days, with much ſatisfaction on both ſides. *Tamerlan* did often confeſs ſince, that he had never ſeen a more glorious City: that it was worthy, in regard of its advantageous ſcituation, to command the whole World. He look'd with admiration, upon the rich and ſtately Buildings; the rare Pillars, with all their Ornaments; the wonderful Pyramides of ſuch a prodigious height, which *Conſtantine* the Great had erected, in imitation of thoſe of *Egypt*. He admired all the beautiful Gardens, ſo neat and curious; and declared that he was never ſorry for his Expedition, becauſe he had thereby ſaved from burning and plunder, the nobleſt and moſt beautiful City of the World. He was often heard to praiſe the Emperour *Emanuel*, for his mildneſs and humanity. When he knew that *Tamerlan* delighted in beautiful Horſes, he gave him thirty of ſuch a rare ſhape, ſtrength, and excellency, that they could not be matched in the World. He preſented him alſo with the richeſt Cloaths of Gold and Silk in the Country: and ſent great Gifts to all his Lords and Princes of the Army: And whilſt it continued in that place,

he

be provided all things needful for the Souldiers, in ſuch plenty, that no Perſon had cauſe to complain of want. At laſt, after fifteen days ſtay at *Burſa*, and a ſtrict Alliance concluded upon between the two Princes; *Tamerlan*, in purſuance of his deſign, reſolved to viſit the Sultan of *Egypt*, before his departure to his own Country, to chaſtiſe him, becauſe he had aſſiſted *Bajazet* againſt him; for in all his proceedings he ſhew'd himſelf dreadful to the Enemies that had offended him, and mild and courteous to his Friends.

CHAP.

CHAP. VI.

Tamerlan's War and Expedition against the Sultan of Ægypt.

THE Army departed very well satisfied from *Bursa*, which *Tamerlan* delivered to the Greekish Emperour, after that he had driven away the Turks from all strong Holds, and recover'd allthat they had won, since the beginning of *Bajazet's* reign. All his Souldiers were fled, either beyond the Mountains, or over Sea into *Europe*. There was no place in all *Asia*, that held for him; so dreadful had *Tamerlan's* Army been to the Turks, that they forsook all their Possessions in *Asia*. *Andronicus Palealogus*, the Emperours Nephew, accompanied the Army with ten thousand chosen Horse, which his Unkle had sent with him to serve in the Wars against the Sultan of *Ægypt*, with whose Army *Tamerlan* had several encounters, when they assisted *Bajazet*.

Amongst all these successes and prosperities, the Prince received the joyful news of the birth of a Son, of which the Empress his Wife was happily delivered: This caused the whole Army to congratulate their Princes happiness, by publick feasting, Bone-fires, and all other tokens of an universal joy. He understood by the same express, that all things were in peace in the Empire, that the old Emperour, his Unkle, was in perfect health, which pleased him well; for he was afraid, that he should drop away in his absence, and that some great Persons,

or certain Favourites ſhould cauſe a diſturbance and a diviſion in his abſence amongſt his Subjects, tho the example of the other Rebels, who had been ſufficiently puniſh'd for their folly, ought to have made them wiſe; and beſides, when a Prince hath his weapons in his hand, and is become dreadful to Strangers, he need not much fear any rebellious intrigues and practiſes at home amongſt his own Subjects. For commonly men, that are the moſt ambitious, follow him in the War; but when a Prince is ſoft and effeminate, the Souldiers, that are without imployment, runs to him, who makes the greateſt complaints, and who commonly vails his ambitious pretences with an appearance of a juſt grievance. In ſuch a caſe, before a diſarmed Prince is able to gather together his Troops, and make new levies of Men to compoſe a Body of an Army, the Rebellion may chance to be increas'd, and the Rebels grown ſo numerous, that they may perhaps be too powerful for their inconſiderate Prince.

Six months were ſpent ſince *Tamerlan*'s leaving of *Samarcand*. This time ſeem'd tedious to ſome, whoſe earneſt deſire to ſee their Country gave them a longing to march that way. This cauſed many of them to murmur in the Camp, becauſe the Prince began to undertake a War in a far Country, which would not ſuddenly end. This report, which might have had a dangerous ſequel, obliged Prince *Axalla* to acquaint the Emperour therewith.

He preſently called his Army together, as ſoon as they were arrived to a place convenient, and ſpake to them at the general muſter, in ſuch terms as were able to oblige them to undergo all hardſhip for their Princes ſervice.

As

As ſoon as they were arrived at *Caleſtrie* a general review was order'd, where the Emperour was in perſon, and ſpoke to the *Parthians* in this language.

Tamerlan's *Speech to the* Parthians.

I Cannot imagine, my dear Companions, that the deſire of ſeeing again your Native Country is ſo violent in you, or that you are weary to purchaſe more Glory to our Nation, ſeeing that all the people of the World adventure all things for that advantage which you have in hand, we have together for many years obtain'd great Victories, which have rais'd the Parthians *in reputation above all other Nations, and ſpread their fame round about the World.*

If you be weary to fight under my Command, Tamerlan *ſhall accompliſh his glorious deſigns by other Nations than his own, and the* Parthian, *ſo much renown'd by the late ſucceſſes obtained upon many people, ſhall ſee themſelves forgotten or miſerably deſpiſed, through the ſhame that you ſhall have brought upon them. I cannot think any ſuch thing of you, fellow Souldiers, whoſe Reputation is ſpread all over the World, I will not, nor ought not to believe it. Follow me therefore, and let us go courageouſly and fight the Mamelucks. You know very well, though they live at a diſtance from us, they have endeavoured to withſtand our ſucceſſes by joyning their forces with the* Ottoman *Armies to oppoſe us: Will you ſuffer me to revenge my ſelf upon them without your help? Would you have the* Tartarians *and my Allies have a ſhare in my Victories, whilſt you ſhall go and be idle at home? Will you loſe the benefit of ſo glorious an enterpriſe?*

As soon as the Prince had ended his speech, all the *Parthians* cryed out with a loud voice, that they would die with him; and that, saying they had attended upon him in *China*, they would now follow him all over the world; but they intreated him to have compassion of their Wounds, of their gray hairs, so as at last to set some bounds to their labors, and his Conquests. This he promis'd them in such an obliging and mild manner, that they were all very well satisfied. The Emperour spoke not a word to the others, for they were glad of the advantage they had over the *Parthians*, to have seen them ready to disband and forsake the Army. So that, when *Tamerlan* rode before the Scythian Cavalry, they all cried with one voice, *Victorious Emperour, what mean you, March on, March on, we will follow all over the World.* These words gave a great contentment to the Prince, for the *Parthians* and Scythians were his best Souldiers. He was therefore glad of an opportunity to encrease their emulation. To oblige them the more to be faithful to him, the Prince commanded a strict inquiry to be made for all persons diseased or wounded, and besides their ordinary salary he appointed them and others to receive from the Treasurer of the Army extraordinary wages.

Then the Army marched forward with much joy and assurance of success. The Vanguard, commanded by *Axalla*, and *Andronicus*, went before. *Tamerlan* had news how that the *Sultan* of *Egypt* was very active in gathering his men together to defend himself and his Country; though he could easily guesse how difficult a matter it was to stop the Terror and fury of a victorious Army, that had overthrwon

thrown the moſt dreadful Monarch of all *Aſia*.

Theſe conſiderations made the Mamelucks look about. But the *Sultan* was a young Prince promoted to that high dignity by his extraordinary courage and rare Vertues, but he had no great inſight in War. But ſince his Election he had not given any proof of his valour and affection to his people. He ſaw himſelf the Lord of a large Continent and of many ſtrong Towers well provided and fortified; therefore out of an high conceit of his own greatneſs, and of the confidence that he had in himſelf, he reſolved to try whether fortune would favour him; but rather than to loſe ſo fair an opportunity of declaring his courage, he was willing to hazard his own ruine. As the wining of a battle was all his hopes, he made for that purpoſe all neceſſary preparations to be ready to fight when ever he ſhould be required; and in caſe the victory ſhould fall to his Enemies ſhare, he had ſo order'd his affairs, that he might fly to ſome ſafe and ſecure place of advantage, where he might recover his loſs, and be in a Condition to venture a ſecond Battel.

As ſoon as the Emperour was well informed of his intention, he adviſed with *Axalla* and *Andronicus* which way he ſhould turn the head of his army, that he might force the Enemy to come the ſooner to a battle. It was reſolved by them, that it ſhould take the way through *Caramania* and march ſtrait to *Gevolach*. This was the firſt frontier Town belonging to the Mamelucks, and neareſt to the Turks dominions, who had conquer'd all the Countrey as far as that place, when the peace had been concluded between theſe two Nations. *Bajazet* had endeavoured to have it, that he may receive ſure ſuccours that

way from the *Sultan*, and ſtrengthen himſelf the more againſt the powerful enemy, that was coming againſt him. Therefore this Town, which was of a ſtrong ſcituation, had been furniſh'd with all neceſſaries by the *Sultan* for a ſtout reſiſtance.

Axalla advancing with his Van-guard ſent a Summons to the Townſmen to yeild ſpeedily, or to expect a ſevere puniſhment for their fooliſh confidence and temerity. The Inhabitants return'd this anſwer. That they were obedient Subjects, and had expreſs orders to fight it out, and reſiſt as long as they could, and that they would rather ſuffer death than fail in their duty and fidelity to their Prince and Country.

When the Emperour heard their obſtinacy he was wrath, that a ſmall Town ſhould be ſo bold as to attempt to ſtop his power, ſeeing that he had met with no place able to reſiſt him ſince his departure from *Samarcand*, for all Cities ſent him their Keys when he was yet at a diſtance from them. But ſeem'd to diſſemble a while his diſpleaſure, and commanded *Axalla* to go beyond it towards *Aleppo*, which willingly was ſurrender'd, becauſe there was no other Garriſon there but of the natural Inhabitants.

In the mean while *Tamerlan*, being highly incens'd at this great affront of thoſe of *Gevolach*, was reſolved to beſiege it; for that purpoſe he caus'd it to be ſurrounded, and his Infantry to make their approaches by the means of his Engines and Artillery. They gave a furious aſſault, but were driven back with the loſs of about twelve hundred. *Tamerlan*, more angry than before at this repulſe, cauſed the Town to be aſſaulted the ſecond time,

time, the Prince was then wounded, but mauger the enemies ſtout reſiſtance, *Tamerlans* men won the Walls, from whence they ſhot continually and killed a great many within. At this ſame time the Prince was informed that the *Sultan* was haſtening to ſuccour and relieve *Gevolach*, according to his promiſe to the Inhabitants. This news caus'd him to repent, that he had ſuffer'd *Axalla* to advance ſo far before the reſt of the Army. To amend his fault, he reſolved to go and joyn with him, hoping by this means to ſurprize the Enemy, who doubtleſs would think that *Axalla* was alone, and would not imagine, that *Tamerlan* could be ſo near at hand, for this purpoſe he left the Prince of *Tanais*, with thirty thouſand men, to continue the ſiege, and march'd with the reſt of his Army without baggage towards *Borgat*. There he heard that the Sultan was gone over the River at *Conſingan*, with about threeſcore and fourteen thouſand horſe, and one hundred thouſand foot. In purſuance of his deſign, he underſtood at *Aleppo* the place where the Enemy was encamp'd, intending to ſurprize him, for that purpoſe he ſent *Axalla* about half a dayes journey before, and followed him with the remainder of the Army. Fourteen or fifteen of the Scouts were cut in pieces before their Comrades could help them, becauſe the wayes were uneven and crooked.

The Enemy was miſinform'd, they Imagin'd that only the Troops about *Aleppo* were near them which *Axalla* commanded.

They fell therefore upon him ſooner than he expected; without delay he gave notice of it to the Emperor, at the ſame inſtant intreating him to make all

speed and advance forward, and that he would endeavour to dally with the Enemy to give him more time to come up to him, and for that intent he would pitch upon a convenient ground to fight.

At this news the Prince dispatch'd away *Calibet* with twenty thousand horse, they were so happy as to joyn with the rest in good time, because of a long and narrow passage which led into a valley, through which the Enemies were forced to go softly.

This accident gave time to *Axalla* to send *Tamerlan* word, and to post himself in the most favourable place that the Country afforded, for otherwise he had been constrain'd to retreat back to the Emperour in the best order that he could possibly observe.

Having therefore planted himself in that place, he assaulted the Enemy with small parties as they came down from the Mountain. For at the bottom they intended likewise to draw up their men for the fight, in the mean whiles *Calibet* was come in with his Ten thousand horse, which encouraged *Axalla* the more; for before he had but thirty thousand horse and Ten thousand more led by *Andronicus*, but these were for the most part of *Albania* very good Souldiers. This Prince desired of *Axalla* to grant him the first on-set, which he dar'd not to refuse him for fear of displeasing him. He begun the fight so furiously that he overthrew and killed a great many Enemies, but he was one of the first killed; mortally wounded in this charge and unhappily killed for want of a singly releif. He was without doubt a Prince of an Heroick Spirit, for in that tender age he shewed sufficiently that he did not degenerate from the Honor and Noble minds of his Ancestors.

Axalla succeeded him with his Body of horse partly

partly *Parthians*, partly Christians, who were paid by *Tamerlan:* with this Body he prevailed so well upon the *Sultans* Troups, that he scatter'd them and broke in as far as the Infantry, where he had need of new courage and resolutions to withstand the fury of that body of foot. But his party, who had been alwayes used to overcome, wherever he led them, ingaged against the foot, which so much success, that they had almost defeated them and put them to flight, but *Axalla* recalled them back.

In the heat of the Battle, a body of five and twenty thousand of the Enemies horse, where the *Sultan* was in person, charg'd *Calibes* furiously, and was received with the same gallantry at that instant. *Axalla* return'd back from the Infantry, which he had left half overthrown, and seeing *Calibes* ingaged and worsted, he assaulted the *Mamelucks* upon the Flanks and disorder'd them, but a body of fifteen thousand horse, which stood behind the infantry, with orders not to fight, but when they saw great need, broke in upon *Axalla's* party, in the same manner put them in disorder, kill'd *Axallas* horse, wounded him and took him Prisoner. A cowardly horse man at that instant, without staying to observe what followed, clap'd spur to his horse, and with all speed went to meet the Emperour to tell him this news, which afflicted him to the heart, because he repos'd himself much upon *Axalla's* courage, skill and experience. This caus'd him therefore to make the more haste, he came into the Battle so seasonably, that had he not arriv'd as he did the Victory had been lost, he had sent before Ten thousand horse, and followed with five and twenty thousand more, of his stoutest Souldiers, besides

beſides he had five and twenty thouſand of his Auxillary Troops upon the Wings.

His coming chang'd the face of the battle, for the *Sultan*, not knowing any thing of this body of men that were going to fall upon him, he being not able to diſcover them at a diſtance, becauſe of a Valley through which they paſſed, he was ſtrangely ſurpris'd, when he ſaw them firſt appear; at that very time, when the Troops Commanded by *Calibes* and *Axalla* reſiſted in a diſorder. The ten thouſand Horſe ſent before, came in freſh and charg'd the Mamelucks, who thought they had already won the day, the Emperour alſo at that inſtant followed with all his Cavalry and Infantry. So that the *Sultan* was forc'd to ſound a retreat, for he was not able to withſtand ſo great a fury, and ſaw that the whole Army was come againſt him. Then he perceived, but too late, his raſhneſs and unadviſedneſs in that he had not ſent to view his enemies Army. In the mean while *Axalla* had diſingaged himſelf from the Souldier that had taken him priſoner. He was a foot a little while, but being known by one of his men he was mounted again, and they underſtood that he had but a light wound.

The Emperour, to hinder the *Sultan* from rallying his men, purſued his Victory three full leagues. This unhappy Prince had three Horſes kill'd under him, in the ingagement, where he perform'd the duty both of a Captain and of a common Souldier. But he had committed a fault that was not to be remedied. *Tamerlan* was guilty of as great a miſtake, by ſending the Vanguard ſo far before which might have coſt him very dear, had

had it not been for *Axalla's* ſubtilty in dallying with and keeping off the Enemy with light skirmiſhes, for otherwiſe the Emperour could not have came in timely enough to ſuccour his oppreſſed and diſordered Troops.

Thus it happens frequently, the greateſt faults and miſtakes in War are turned by Providence into Stratagems of Wars, when it intends to favour the party, as it did *Tamerlan* in this occaſion. His diligence in aſſiſting his men caus'd him to win this notable Victory, which broke the heart of the War, and brought it to a period ſooner than moſt men expected. It was known afterwards that the *Sultan* had been conſelled to lengthen the war, which was a wiſe and a ſafe advice, but his fury and courage could admit of no delayes, he made too much haſte to his ruin.

This battel was bloody, near Fourſcore thouſand men loſt their lives on both ſides, but no perſon of any note of *Tamerlan's* Army, but *Andronicus* and three *Parthian* Captains of great worth. All the equipage of the *Sultan* was taken the next day, and a great deal of plunder.

The Prince ſent meſſengers to all his Allies to acquaint them with the Victory, and chiefly he ſent to the Greek Emperour to expreſs his grief, for the Death of Prince *Andronicus*, intreating him to appoint ſome other perſon in his ſtead, to command the Greeks. He ſent alſo meſſengers to publiſh the News of this great victory in all his Kingdomes, and to give an account of it to his Unkle the Emperour.

In this place the Army was not able to ſubſiſt long, becauſe it was ſo numerous, and the Country

try between the Mountains narrow and barren in many places; *Tamerlan* therefore sent his Troops about, and caused his Army to take a little more Elbow room, but he sent *Axalla* with all the Cavalry of the Vanguard to pursue after the *Sultan*, and not suffer him to have any time to rest. He fled towards *Ægypt* with forty thousand horse.

The happy News of this Victory soon came to the Ears of the Prince of *Tanais*, who sent it to the besieged within *Gevolach*. They were mightily afflicted when they heard it.

A while after *Tamerlan* sent him orders to punish them for their folly by destroying the City with fire and sword, and sparing none, that they might be an example to all other places, and hinder them from resisting his power. This command was soon after put in Execution; for the Town was won by assault, the peoples courages failing them, through the many losses they had suffered, and the daily watchings and skirmishes; for the Prince of *Tanais* gave them no time to breath: After this he came to the Emperour, who was refreshing himself in *Aleppo*.

But after the *Sultans* retreat into *Egypt*, he fortified all his Towns, and sent for supply of men and mony from all his Allies, he placed his Garrisons in all the places needful, and caus'd all the Country to be ruined and burn'd, through which *Tamerlans* Army was to pass in the road to his Country. He spared nothing that could be serviceable to him, to make him, if it were possible, quit the desire of marching that way; this caused so great a scarcity in this numerous Army, that the Emperour was obliged to review his Companies, and leave behind

hind all uſeleſs perſons; afterwards he divided his Army into three bodies, the firſt he commanded, the ſecond was led by *Axalla*, the third by *Calibes*; the carriages and baggage he left behind guarded by a party of foot. *Calibes* was order'd to take the way towards the River *Euphrates*, through that Country which confines upon *Perſia*, to ſubdue it. The Emperour himſelf took the way along the Sea Coaſt. And *Axalla* through *Arabia*. The Prince commanded threeſcore thouſand horſe and an hundred thouſand foot. *Axalla* fifty thouſand foot and forty thouſand horſe, and *Calibes* thirty thouſand horſe and fifty thouſand foot. All that Country ſeem'd to be cover'd over with men; nevertheleſs, there was ſuch an exact diſcipline and a rule obſerved in the Army, that proviſions were brought in plentifully, and there was nothing wanting for man or beaſt.

In the mean while *Axalla* purſued after the *Sultan*, and obliged him to make more ſpeed to divide his Army, moſt of his men in his neceſſity forſook him. It was ſaid that he fled into *Arabia*, where it was not poſſible for the *Tartars* great Army to follow him; onely with four thouſand horſe, it was poſſible to defend himſelf and vex a more numerous party, becauſe of the ſcarcity of proviſions. In this juncture of affairs, all the Maritine Towns open'd their gates to *Tamerlan*, as *Megate*, *Arnan*, *Tortoſa*, *Gibellete*, *Barut*, and *Nephthalim*. But *Damaſcus*, where there was a Garriſon of the *Sultan*, oblig'd *Tamerlan* to beſiege it, this was a ſtrong Town, where the *Sultan* had appointed Prince *Zamadren* to be governour. He behaved himſelf well, and made a ſtout reſiſtance, but when the

the Artillery had open'd a breach in the Wall, the Prince of *Tanais* assaulted it and won it, only the Cittadel an admirable Castle, look'd upon as impregnable, held out; but the Governour, admitting all that sought shelter there, hasten'd the surrender; for when provisions began to fail, men pin'd away with hunger, which caus'd them to offer to surrender it upon composition; but the Prince would not grant them any, to punish them for their unadvised resistance, when necessity began to press them they yeilded themselves at the Conquerours discretion, he caus'd some to be kill'd with the Sword, and others were made Prisoners of War. This severity nois'd abroad in the Country oblig'd all the Inhabitants, thirty leagues round to bring the keys of their wall'd Towns to *Tamerlan*, who caused them to be us'd civily and courteously, and impos'd no other burden upon them, but to contribute according to their ability to the Armies subsistance.

When *Damascus* was thus taken *Tamerlan* march'd strait to *Jerusalem*, from whence the Citizens had driven their Garrison, as all the Towns of *Judea* had also done, they all yielded themselves to the Emperour, he received them with many expressions of his goodness, restablish'd them in the free enjoyment of all their priviledges, promising to visit the Sepulcher of *Jesus Christ*, according to the custome of the *Mahometan* Law, and for his sake he denied them nothing that they could ask. From thence the Army went to *Corazin*, where a Garison of six thousand men had orders from the *Sultan* to defend themselves and their Town, which they seem'd to be resolved upon at first, but when they saw the Army planted round about the walls with an intention to

carry

carry them, their hearts failed them; ſo that they choſe rather to implore the Princes favour, who granted it to them freely, than to hazard a reſiſtance without hopes of releif. Some Troops were here left behind to give a check to certain *Mamelucks* of *Naſſavia*, who cut off many about the Army, *Calibes* had orders ſent him to beſiege them and ſcatter the Troops that gathered themſelvs together about that place to incommode and rob the perſons, who brought proviſions to the Army.

This retreat of the *Sultan* into *Arabia* was but a meer pretence, and a flying report. He was gone into *Ægypt* towards *Cairo*, having left behind ſeveral parties to diſturb and aſſault the Army in their march, and chiefly in the narrow lanes and paſſages. He caus'd a grievous deſtruction to be made in the Country round about to famiſh the Army, but *Tamerlan*'s Cavalry followed him ſo cloſſe at the heels, that he had not time to do all the miſchief that he intended. The Inhabitants alſo for their own as well as for the enemies ſake, oppoſed aud hindred the full execution of his deſign. When the Emperour was at *Miſerit*, he cauſed a Proclamation to be made, to forbid any to go beyond *Jordan*, that he might the better preſerve the Country from whence his Army had their Proviſions. He went as he had Promiſed to *Jeruſalem* in the company of his greateſt Favourites, guarded with a party of Horſe, to viſit, as a religious Prince, that Sepulcher, which is honoured by all the Nations of the world, and to preſent his gifts. When he was in the City, where the Inhabitants received him with all poſſible honours, he ſaught for all the Antiquities of the old Temple of *Solomon*, and was led, as the Pilgrims, through

through all the places where Christ had preach'd and wrought Miracles. When he had ended his Prayers at the Sepulcher, he gave large gifts. Two things chiefly gave him great content, when he inquir'd of certain Monks and Religious Men at the Sepulcher, where their Lords Body was? He is, said they, in Heaven at the right hand of God: Then turning to his Mahumetan Train, he ask'd them where they thought that this Prophet was? The Cherif, that stood next to him, replyed, that he was a true God, that he was gone before to sit in the first place in Heaven, where he should be received also. As he came from Heaven so he was departed thither again. Then the Prince fell upon his knees, and held his Name in great veneration. And at his return to *Samarcand*, he built him a sumptuous Temple, taking a great delight to hear men tell of his Miracles, and commanded that some should mention them often in his hearing.

The other thing, that gave him a delight and admiration, was, when in viewing all the places of devotion, he came to that at last, where Christ leaving his Disciples ascended up into the glories of Heaven. There he left behind the fashion of his foot, which caus'd him to wonder at it extraordinarily: And when one told him that a Pilgrim had been here ravish'd in Spirit, he thought him happy. *Axalla* with many other Christians were then with him.

In this manner, *Tamerlan*, by visiting the holy places and relicks, gave a great satisfaction to all the people, but the Jews could not indure but exclaim'd against him openly. He had never any affection for them, but named them *Wicked Men*, and

Cur-

Curſed of God. He loved to ſee men ſincere in their piety and devotions, and was glad to have ſeen *Axalla* ſo liberal of his offerings to the holy Sepulcher. In the mean whiles the Army was in their march to *Tema* towards *Ægypt*, the Emperour had notice, that the *Slutan* gathered his Troops togeher from all parts, and was then at *Alexandria*. He himſelf, after the performance of his devotions, followed the Army, and commanded the Van-guard to go towards *Damietta*. He had been told that it was not to be taken by force.

The *Sultan* had ſecur'd it with a ſtrong Garriſon: It was a maritine Town, one of the moſt noted of all *Ægypt*, ſo that it was in great reputation. Many of the Emperours followers labour'd to diſwade him from attempting it, adviſing him to adventure upon ſomething elſe, telling him that it was no diſcreetion to run his numerous army into a narrow peice of Land, but that he ſhould rather march higher into the Country, but all their reaſons could not perſwade him from going thither, for he judged, that there was nothing that could put a ſtop to his good Fortune. He therefore commanded *Axalla* to block up the Town, and he followed him thither with the remainder of the Army.

When *Axalla* was there he ſent in a ſummons, commanding them to ſubmit, and declaring to the Chriſtian Inhabitants, who were there very numerous, what a folly it would be for them to oppoſe his Emperours power. That his mildneſs and goodneſs ſhould rather oblige them to free themſelves from the Tyranny of the Moors and Mamelucks, who oppreſſed them beyond meaſure. He told them, that he was a Chriſtian as well as they, and

therefore ſhould be alwayes very glad to ſerve them. He cauſed alſo ſome of the Greek Captains to argue the caſe with them. They dealt ſo effectually, that they perſwaded them to adventure their lives and endeavour to drive out of their City the Mamelucks, and all thoſe who held for the *Sultan*. They delayed not in the execution of this deſign, but with their weapons in their hands, they got the command of one quarter of the City, and open'd one of the Gates to *Axalla*. All the Mamelucks were either kill'd or taken Priſ'ners, and *Damietta* was yeilded to the Prince. This News, which the Emperour received in his march, cauſed him to expect a happy ſucceſs in the proſecution of his great deſign. He could not have hoped for ſuch an eaſie accompliſhment of it, if this ſtrong City had been in the Enemies hands, for by its advantageous ſcituation upon one of the branches of *Nilus*, it would have ruin'd his Army and cut off all their proviſions. But now, that it was in his power, he could reaſonably expect from all parts of *Greece*, as the Emperour *Emanuel* had promis'd him all manner of things neceſſary for his Souldiers, which were already coming to him by *Damietta*. He appointed there a ſtrong Garriſon of two thouſand Grecians, with a Governour, to keep for him the City. They took the Oath of fidelity.

The Prince found this place according to his mind, and ſtronger than he had at firſt imagin'd. The Inhabitants of *Lariſſa* ſubmitted likewiſe, and would not ſtand out againſt his invincible power. Garriſons were placed in all the places ſcituate near the Sea, that proviſions might not be hinder'd to be

be brought to the Army. This was one of his greateſt cares to provide well for ſo vaſt a multitude, that they might not want.

Tamerlan ſtopt a few dayes in *Damietta*, but ſent his vanguard towards *Alexandria*, but immediately after he followed them, and cauſed them to march about towards *Grand Cairo*. The *Sultan*, who had provided himſelf for a ſtout reſiſtance in *Alexandria*, was ſurpris'd to hear of this unexpected charge: he had no time to deliberate, but with all ſpeed made what haſte he could to prevent *Tamerlan*. He enter'd into *Cairo* as the Army was in ſight of it, with a ſtrong reſolution to ſtop the entry of the *Tartars*, and preſerve the paſſage of the River that leads to *Alexandria*. It was reported that the *Sultan* gat into *Cairo* with forty thouſand horſe, and threeſcore thouſand foot; but *Tamerlan* could not believe it. However he arriv'd there in very good time to preſerve his intereſt, for the Tartarian Army was at *Buldat*, ſeven leagues from the City, at that time the ſlaves, who are very numerous there, had an intent to revolt and open to us a gate, which they might have done with eaſe, had not the *Sultans* coming hinder'd them. This therefore was a great let to the ſucceſs of the *Tartarian* Army, and the conſequence of it troubled them not a little; for fear of not being able to get proviſions, which if they had happen'd to fail them, they had been forced to raiſe their ſiege and depart. Notwithſtanding the Prince, whoſe courage nothing could terrifie, drew near to the City with all his Army, cauſing them to intrench themſelves chiefly to preſerve his Cavalry from ſudden attempts. He cauſed ſeveral attempts to be made upon the City,

wherein his men had alwayes the advantage, by these assaults he had a trial of their courages and resolutions, and endeavoured to offer an opportunity to the slaves to venture out and acquaint him with the posture of affaires within the City. The Emperour was afraid of what might happen, and of the tediousness of the Siege; therefore for that reason as well as to try the disposition of his Enemy, if he might oblige him to venture out, drew up his Army before the City. He hop'd that if he had been so bold as to venture out, during that absence, there might be some stirring and revolt in the City amongst the Inhabitants, weary of the Tyranny of the *Mamelucks*, or amongst the Slaves, unto whom underhand he had promised their freedome. None dared look out, all the benefit that he reap'd by this action was, but to understand more fully the situation of *Cairo*, and shew the Inhabitants the strength and number of his invincible Army. But at the same time he caused them to be dealt withal by Slaves of their own Nation, who, flying from us unto the City, caus'd them to understand, that the Emperour intended not to ruin them; that he had no intention but to fight with the *Mamelucks* his enemies. This underhand dealing caus'd such an impression in their minds, that they all agreed to free themselves from the company of these troublesome Guests.

When the Emperour understood what success of this subtil negotiation, he resolved to draw near with his Infantry, at half a mile from the Town, that his approach might encourage the Citizens the more; for they had sent word, that they would rise in arms and fight for us against our enemies

mies and theirs. Upon this news, he ſent for the Cheiftains of his Army, to open to them his mind, to hear their advice, and give them the neceſſary orders for the carrying on of his deſign with ſucceſs. He told them, that he was come before that City, imagining that it had been unprovided and without any Garriſon, eaſie to be won, that it had been able, if taken, to have caus'd his Army to ſubſiſt a long time, and procure them great advantages, but that being prevented by the *Mamelucks*, who were got in poſſeſſion of it with all their Army, there was two great inconveniences, that would attend upon him, if he did continue in the ſiege: the firſt was the difficulty of getting proviſions, for by endeavouring to famiſh the beſieged, he run the hazard of ſtarving his own Army. The ſecond inconveniency was the exceſſive heats of the approaching Seaſon, which would prove ſo much the more dangerous to his men, becauſe they were not us'd to them; and if diſeaſes and diſtempers ſhould enter amongſt them they would ruin him and his deſigns. He told them alſo, that he had reſolved to confine all his deſires to *Cairo* and *Alexandria*, and to proceed no further in his Conqueſts: That after the ſubduing of theſe two places he would return to *Samarcand* loaden with the Spoils of *Aſia*: That it would be a ſhame to them to flie away from an enemy, whom they had lately beaten, and who, to avoid the ſight of them, had wandered up and down the Mountains and Deſarts two Months: That they were got into that City, becauſe they truſted more to the ſtrength of its walls and bulworks, than to their weapons and courages. That it did become them to ſhew the vanity of

this confidence of the *Mamelucks*; for if they ſhelter'd themſelves in ſtrong-Holds and Walls, the *Parthians* and *Tartarians* had a more numerous Army than theirs, and ſtouter courages, more uſed to overcome all difficulties; therefore they were able to render thoſe heaps of ſtones and mortar uſeleſs, for at the firſt aſſault, they would be able to leap over all the walls and barracado's with which the Enemies had fortified the ſtreets of the City; that all theſe things would not be able to ſecure the *Mamelucks* from fear, and from flying before them. That if they would attach their enemies unexpectedly, whiles they thought themſelves ſafe within their Walls, and not to be forced: That the very ſurpriſing attempt would half overcome them.

It is far more honourable (ſaid he to them) *to aſſault them than to fly away from them ſhamefully, and and turn our backs to thoſe who have ſeen our faces ſo often to their loſs. This is a ſpecial favour that the great God of hoſts hath granted to us theſe twenty years, that we have been fighting with many Warlike people, that we have never turned them our backs. We muſt therefore diſown the Parthian name, and forget all our former Victories and glory if we forſake this Siege and depart; for it is certain in ſuch a caſe our enemies would never fail to purſue us, and cut ſhort our proviſions, and to publiſh abroad, to our eternal ſhame, our flight; this would cauſe many of thoſe that fight for us forſake us in our need, and turn againſt us, and we ſhould ſee thoſe, who have yeilded to us, betray us, and become our enemies.* The Emperour made this diſcourſe to his Captains to give them to underſtand that there was but two wayes to take, either to forſake the City and the Seige, or to fight with the Enemy.

This

This ſpeech aſtoniſh'd them with the Novelty and the greatneſs of the enterpriſe; for they had never endeavoured to force an Army retrench'd within ſtrong Walls, and they were afraid of the ſequel of ſuch an attempt. Nevertheleſs their honour and reputation, which they ſaw ingag'd, prevail'd upon them, and caus'd them to contemn all the dangers, and death it ſelf, which they foreſaw as infallible. Whiles every one was thinking upon the enterpriſe, with their heads hanging down with a great ſilence, *Tamerlan* deſired *Axalla* to ſpeak and diſcover his mind; which he did in this manner. *Worthy Prince, wherefore do you deſire to ſearch our minds? Do you not yet know the inclinations and courages of your Captains and Soldiers? Do you doubt whither they will prefer the advancement of your glory to their own lives? wherefore do you inquire from us our reſolutions? Lead up only, and you ſhall ſee, whether the great affection we have alwayes had for you be now deminiſh'd: do you think that the walls of* Cairo *are ſtrong enough to reſiſt our Courages and ſtop your Cavalry? The firſt horſe-man, that ſhall put his head within the walls, will open a way to the whole Army.*

Aſſoon as *Axalla* had ended his ſpeech, all the Captains cried out, and intreated to be led to the fight, proteſting that they were ready to Sacrifice themſelves for the Honour and Glory of their Prince.

The Emperour was mighty well ſatisfied with their affectionate expreſſions, for which he return'd them his hearty thanks. Therefore at the ſame time he gave Orders for the aſſault, and divided his Infantry into three Bodies. The Lieutenant

General was to lead thirty thousand men. The Prince of *Tanais* was to follow him with fifty thousand more. *Axalla* was to succeed him with a like number of Infantry, with four thousand Horse arm'd with Lance and Buckler. The Prince came a little after, with ten thousand Horse before him, and he himself in the midst of fifty thousand Foot, who were followed by the rest of the Cavalry, whom he commanded in person, having given the charge of the Infantry to *Axalla*, in whom he placed his chiefest trust.

The Princes intent was to win one of the Towns of *Cairo*, and there to lodge himself, that he might be able to advance by degrees. But it concerns us to know, that the *Sultan* was in the City with all his forces, which amounted to threescore thousand foot, and fifty thousand horse, of whom thirty thousand were *Mamelucks*, brave Souldiers train'd up in the art of war. The *Tartars* had found what they were by experience. But his Infantry were not so skilful, for they were but fresh Souldiers, newly rais'd in *Arabia*, *Persia*, and *Lybia*, and a great many were but Slaves lately set at liberty, for his ordinary and standing Foot had been overthrown in the last Battles.

The Prince had discovered to none but to *Axalla* the hopes that he had in the rising of the Slaves and Moors. When therefore all things where readily provided, he caused the first body of Foot to advance to the place that he had appointed to attack the Enemy in the Front, when he saw them charge home, and force the *Sultans* men into their Trenches, he caused them to be followed and seconded by the Prince of *Tanais* with fifty thousand under his com-

command. Then the fight was moſt cruel and bloody.

In the mean whiles *Axalla* march'd along certain palm trees, in a place that he imagin'd was forſaken, to go to the aſſiſtance of his men by another way. He was not miſtaken, he found little or no reſiſtance, ſo that with eaſe he broke into the Trenches; he applied himſelf next to perform *Tamerlans* orders, and fill up with boards and other materials, the holes and ditches, that the Horſe might get over, but as he was buſie in this work, the Enemy came upon him with twenty thouſand men to hinder him. *Axalla* left three thouſand to end the work begun, and make a way with all ſpeed for the Cavalry, and with the reſt he charg'd the Enemy.

The *Mamelucks* were coming to him in good order. They were too hard for the Prince of *Tanais*, and had ſome advantage upon him, but it laſted not long, for as ſoon as the way was made for the Horſe, the ten thouſand men charg'd the *Mamelucks* in the Rear, where the *Sultan* was in perſon, after theſe, ten thouſand more were ſent by the Prince, who with all his Cavalry followed next. All together broke in upon the Enemy without delay, ſo that they had no time but to fly to the ſecond Trenches, which they had made, in the ſecond Town. The fight laſted ſeven whole hours, all this time it was not to be judged, which party ſhould gain the Victory. The Enemies defended themſelves ſtoutly, but when the Prince had driven them from their firſt Trenches, he ſounded a retreat, and was contented to lodge all night in that place, reſolving the next day to purſue the Victory.

One third of the Town was already in *Tamerlans* poſſeſſion, whoſe Infantry were quartered next to the Ene-

Enemies second Trenches, which gave occasion to several small skirmishes which hapned most times to the advantage of the *Tartars*, who behaved themselves most couragiously.

That day fifteen or sixteen thousand men were killed on the Enemies side, and seven thousand of *Tamerlans*. *Dragnen* Lieutenant General of the Infantry of the *Sultan* died, with many other Officers who were in the heat of the battle.

It was generally confessed that *Axalla*'s experience and good judgement, this day were very useful in getting the Victory.

The same night news being brought to the Prince, that the *Sultan* had a design to pass over the River, he gave order to ten thousand horse to post themselves along the banks, when the *Sultan* heard of it, he imagin'd that all the Army had been there, therefore he was not so bold as to venture his person at the passage. At the break of day, the Emperour caus'd the Trenches to be fill'd up, and the fight to begin by the Prince of *Tanais* of one side, and by *Axalla* on the other. But after a slight resistance, when the *Sultan* perceived that his Infantry drew back and left their Trenches to their enemies, the fear of the coming of the Cavalry, caus'd him to forsake the Town. He performed this design, which he had fail'd of in the night, by drawing up his Army in the void space between the River and the Town, that he might be able to escape over into *Alexandria*.

In the mean while the Prince having taken by force the second Trenches, the Souldiers broke into the City and kill'd every one they met with, none being able to keep them in, when the Emperour was inform'd of the way the *Sultan* took to pass

over

over the River, he followed him with all his Cavalry and all the foot, that he could pick up from the plunder and ſpoils of the City, unto which they were furiouſly bent. But the *Sultan* had provided in time, to ſecure his retreat and paſſage, by getting into his power a narrow peice of ground ſecur'd from the Rivers violence with ſtrong ſtakes, there he poſted fifteen thouſand of his beſt Souldiers, whom he called his ſlaves. The ſcituation was ſuch that they were able to defend themſelves, and could not be forced without Infantry. Such as were brought to find them, were loath to leave their companions, to take all the plunder, therefore they march'd but ſlowly and without courage until the Emperour himſelf had promis'd them, to take notice of them and give them rewards. At their firſt coming up they aſſaulted theſe Troops, not without difficulty, and loſs of many men, but the enemies made an honourable retreat, they caſt themſelves into the River, with one hand they ſwum, and with the other held their Weapons. In this manner they eſcaped to the other bank. Part of their Cavalry was cut in peices, another part in the confuſion ventur'd into the River and were drown'd, for they could not get over.

This was the laſt endeavour of the *Sultan*, who beheld with ſorrow this great and Stately City from an high place, when it was pillaging. He told his people to comfort them, that they were not men who had overcome them, but a God, who had ſided with his enemies. So much, valour, prudence, and diſcretion, he had taken notice of in the *Tartarian* Army.

The next night after the fight, he judged that the *Tartarians* would be buſie in dividing the ſpoyls and

and that they would have no time to pursue him. He withdrew himself with nine or ten thousand men, for the rest were either scatter'd abroad or drown'd in the River.

As soon as it was day he took the way of *Alexandria*, after that he had thank'd some of his slaves, who were a live after they had saved their Prince by their stout and brave resistance for two hours against all the *Tartarians* Army, and their honourable and glorious retreat at the end of this Noble action. *Tamerlan* himself was so great an admirer of them, that he commanded those that were taken to be brought to him, and out of a desire to use them in his service he treated them kindly, and with gifts and other favours endeavoured to win them to himself, and though they all refused to forsake their former Masters interest he sent them to the *Sultan*. The Prince was us'd to deal thus in that generous manner with those whom he had overcome. He delighted to express his bounty and clemency next after his valour and courage. There is nothing more proper for a great Prince than to cause himself to be beloved by his merciful and loving temper, as well as to render himself dreadful and respected by his power and noble mind.

After this furious fight the Prince retreated a little back, lodging his men between the River and the City, that he might secure and cover the rest of his Army, which might otherwise have easily been defeated during the plunder of that rich and wealthy Town.

This caused him to continue all night on horseback with some of his chief Officers, for with them he rode up and down his Camp visiting every corner

corner, and praiſing his Soldiers for their courragious aſſaults. As ſoon as it was day he went into the Town to take poſſeſſion of the Caſtle, the ordinary abode of the *Sultans*, where all their riches were treaſured up. There he lodg'd and caus'd all his Army to be quarter'd round about this Caſtle, which ſtands at one end of the Town. He commanded by a Proclamation that all plundering ſhould ceaſe, which had laſted four and twenty hours, and every Soldier had orders to return to their colours, and to lodge in their quarters; the next day he ſent out another Proclamation to declare all the Inhabitants free, commanding that all Priſoners ſhould be releas'd. In the Caſtle he found wonderful Riches and inеſtimable Treaſures laid up there by the *Sultans*, many years. There was the more, becauſe they had a law that forbid them to meddle with any thing there but in great neceſſity, when the Kingdome was in want. It was thought that the *Sultan* made the more haſt to get into *Cairo* before *Tamerlan* for fear of loſing theſe Treaſures. Some ſay that he took out in the night many jewels. Others ſpeak as if he never enter'd into it, that he diminiſh'd nothing, for fear that his men ſhould imagine that he intended to forſake them, and they ſhould ſuſpect the retreat he reſolved to make. Others think that he never medled with theſe Treaſures, becauſe he could never dream of being faced in ſuch a City, accompained with ſuch and ſo many faithful Soldiers. And when he ſaw himſelf driven out againſt his expectation be aſcrib'd the Victory to none but to a Divinity, who had ſo powerfully aſſiſted the *Tartarians* Army againſt his men ſecured in ſuch ſtrong fortifications.

The

The Emperour sent word to *Calibes* to inform him of his successes and progress, and to deliver him a Commission to be Governour of *Ægypt*. This happy news was welcome in the numerous Army under his command, which march'd along the River *Euphrates*, it increased daily by the rendition of many Towns, which would not oppose the Princes happiness; all *Persia* trembled at this sudden alteration, at the fall of the *Sultan*. This Country, was then govern'd by several petty Princes, some of them were *Mehometans*, but others *Christians*. The Emperour had an intent to subdue them all.

In the mean while he gave all necessary orders for the preservation of *Cairo*, and caus'd his Army to pass over the River, that he might compleat his Victory, for that purpose he march'd to *Alexandria*, where the *Sultan* had taken sanctuary. But before the departure of the Van-guard with *Axalla* at the head, he rewarded liberally every Souldier, according to their deservings, and courages.

He caus'd the Oath of fidelity to be administer'd to all the Inhabitants of that great City, and of the Towns thereabouts, setling every thing in as much peace as he could in so short a time; for that purpose he left in Garrison there ten thousand men, carried away all such persons as he suspected, and placed others in their stead. Therefore he led with him many persons in his Army to place and settle in the conquered Towns, after this, the people came to him from all parts, to submit themselves, and receive his commands from as far as *Cana*. Embassadors arrived not only from *Arabia Felix*, but

also

alſo from *Africa*, to acknowledge *Tamerlan*'s Empire; for his Victories had ſtruck a dread into all neighbouring Nations and People at a diſtance. He would not ſettle the affairs of *Ægypt* till his return to *Cairo* from *Alexandria*. The Rear of his Army he ſent thither with the Prince of *Tanais*, but he and his Houſhold ſervants embark'd themſelves upon the River *Nilus*, for their pleaſure. It is ſaid, that he took a delight to take notice of the rapidity of this River in ſome places, and its flowneſs in others.

The News was ſoon carried to *Alexandria*, that the Army was in their march to beſiege it, this made the people to riſe up in Arms, the fear of a total ruin caus'd them to ſend to the *Sultan* to intreat him to compaſſionate their weakneſs, and to repreſent to him, that he could not make the ſame reſiſtance againſt ſo powerful an Army as he had done againſt others before. That it did become him to yield to the preſent neceſſity, that he ſhould do well to retire into *Lybia*, whether *Tamerlan*'s Army would never follow him, that if he would do ſo, they would keep for him that faithfulneſs they had ſworn to him. That he need not doubt of their affections for him. That they deſired him to ſave his own perſon, and ſuffer time to perform the reſt. After this meſſage the *Sultan* ſaw that all things turn'd againſt him, he reſolved therefore to depart, he was in hopes, that if the Army continued any long time about *Alexandria*, as they were likely to do, that there would ſome change happen, which might alter the face of his affairs, and offer him an opportunity to attempt ſomething, with this expectation

he

he pacified his troubled mind, and with tears in his eyes, he left the City, repeating often these Words, *God is angry with our Nation, that the time of the ruin of this flourishing Empire was come, that every one ought to submit to the orders of Providence.* That he had done all that could have been expected from him to perform his duty in the defence of his people, and answer their great esteem at his Election: that he hoped to gather up more Troops, and return with a sufficient Army to free them from the slavery of a Forreign Prince. These words spoken before a great multitude, were re-related to *Axalla* first, for he went before with the *Van.* He caus'd the Prince to understand the News, and sent him word, that not only out of *Alexandria*, men came to submit themselves but also from fifty leagues round about. The Prince rejoyced to hear this prosperous march of his Army, because he saw a speedy end to all his labours, and a possibility of returning to his own Country. He was troubled that he had not got the *Sultan* into his custody, this consideration hindred him from treating all such as held for him with that kindness, that he expressed to all the World besides.

When the Princes Army was within one days march of *Alexandria*, *Axalla* was sent for to meet him, and to bring with him some of the chief Citizens to take their Oaths of Allegiance and Fidelity. After this he made his entry with all his Army, but caused them to go out again, and incamp about the Walls, only six thousand horse and twenty thousand foot, be kept for his guard, and sent *Axalla* with his Van-guard to pursue after the *Sultan.* In the mean

while

while the Emperour continued a long time about *Alexandria*, in expectation of some news from *Calibes*. He had sent *Lochistan*, his great Chamberlain to succeed him, a man of great worth, who had alwayes commanded a party of ten thousand horse, and had alwayes been with him.

Calibes took from his Army the same number of horse-men to accompany him into *Ægypt* with his equipage to wait upon the Prince, whom he had no need to solicite, for *Tamerlan* knew so well the deservings of every one, and that which they were able to perform, that in their absence as well as in their presence, honours and Governments, employments and affaires were conferred upon them without their seeking, the Prince was so just in the distribution of his favours. Therefore no body did bribe for the Offices of his Army, for the employments in his House and State; for they proceeded alwayes from his free motion.

When *Axalla* was departed out of *Alexandria*, the sad news was brought that the Emperour his Unkle lay very sick. He had left with him the Empress his wife, the Daughter of this oldman, whom he knew to be wise and prudent, this conforted him not a little. He knew, that if by chance his Unkle should die, she would take care to keep the Kings and Princes his Vassals, and all his other Subjects in peace. But he could not easily imagine, that after so many victories and successes, which were nois'd all over the World, any would be so foolish and bold as to attempt a rebellion against him: the Empress sent him also word, that in expectation of his return she would provide all things needful to circumcise the Son, whom God had given

them, and who was able to undergo that painful ceremony. All these things settled his mind so that he resolved to depart home wards, assoon as he had secured the Conquest of *Ægypt*.

News came to him also from *China*, that the *Chinæses* had endeavored some stirs, but *Odmar* had severely punish'd them in a bloody battle, where the Kings brother had been kill'd, this had secured the Emperour on that side. *Odmar* after the rebellion had inlarg'd and prosecuted the conquests of his Master, but the Old Emperour had sent him orders to appease all things, and to preserve only what he had conquered beyond the River of *Flezan*.

When *Axalla* was departed with the *Van-guard*, he terrified all the Inhabitants of *Africa*; for the people imagin'd that all the Emperours Army followed him, so that two and twenty petty Kings of that Country sent to him their Embassadors to submit themselves to his mercy. But the *Sultan* in his flight was forsaken of all men, his Soldiers return'd back in Troops to yield to *Axalla* every day. *Arsambei* also his Lieutenant General sent to have the Emperours safe conduct, which was granted to him. He came therefore and intreated him, that seeing his Master had been driven out of all his dominions, he would be so gracious to him as to admit him in his service; the Princes humanity received him kindly and granted him all that he could desire; so that *Arsambei* swore to be faithful to him. But this perfidious Traitor had another design in his mind. He had promis'd the *Sultan* to assassinate the Emperour. That he might succeed the better in this execution of this Villainy, he had caused four thousand *Mamelukes* to be received in the

the ſervice of *Tamerlan* in *Alexandria*. They were to aſſiſt him in this wicked attempt in *Alexandria*, where he was buſily employed in ſetling his conquered Countries in peace. The Execution was intended in a morning, when the Prince, according to his cuſtome, ſhould give publick audience to the complaints that were uſually made to him. His guards were ten thouſand men, but then there were not above twelve hundred that waited upon him every day. The Traitor *Arſembei* had made ſeveral of the inhabitants of the Town acquainted with their deſign, they were to riſe up in Armes at the ſame moment of time that the Prince ſhould be kill'd, which they thought to be more feaſable than really it was, the four thouſand Mamelucks were in the Town to act as ſoon as they ſhall have a command. Three weeks more paſs'd after the murder was appointed and reſolved upon before the day appeared for the execution of it, it was but the day before, that the Prince had given him one of the moſt beautiful and ſtouteſt Horſes of his Stables. He had alſo given order to his people to pay him a great reſpect, this Villain therefore drew near to the Emperours perſon in his Tent, which was open to all, that deſired to make their addreſſes to him.

We muſt take notice, that the City of *Alexandria* is built in ſuch a manner, that all the Houſes are flat on the Top, ſo that it is poſſible to paſs over them, from one to the other. In this place *Arſembei* had appointed thoſe perſons to be ready, to help him at the ſame moment, that he ſhould have accompliſh'd his wicked purpoſe: at a diſtance the Prince perceived him drawing towards his perſon, he ask'd him what he deſired, for he wonder'd to ſee him in this place, which was deſigned

only for such as could not have access at other times to his person, as Soldiers and the meaner sort of people, and not for a man of the quality of *Arsembei*. He could not imagine, what might be the cause of this appearance. He observ'd him again, and saw that his countenance chang'd its colour, which caus'd him to fix his eyes upon him, and take notice of his motion. *Arsembei* at that instant, with his drawn Sword in his hand ran to him, but the Prince drew his likewise as speedily, and leaping back two or three paces to avoid the stroak, with a back blow, he cut almost in two the Varlets arm, lifted up to aim at him; at that moment every one ran to help, and succour the Prince. The first man struck him down with a blow upon the head, the wound was not mortal, the Emperour would not suffer him to be kill'd there, that he might learn from him his associates, but this Villain broke out into Lamentation, and complaint at the destiny of his good Master, because this last attempt, an expression of his affection for im, had been useless. The Prince ask'd him, wherefore he had spared him in a just War, and in the fight, to assassinate him now in a treacherous manner, after so many protestations of his service and love, but he made no other answer, but this, *Let me dy, let me dy.* The great Cady or Lord Chief Justice seiz'd upon him, who together with the Lords of the privy Council examin'd him. In the mean while the City and Camp were all in Arms. And the Princes Guards were mounted on Horseback. All the Guards were doubled, the Haven was secured, and the Emperour went home to his Lodgings, glad of so narrow an escape, without

without harm from ſo a great danger.

But the Captains and Souldiers crowded about the Palace with an earneſt deſire to behold him with their eyes, offering to face the Guards, that would not ſuffer them to enter. They ask'd to look upon him with threatning words; for they would have thought him dead had they not ſeen him. The Prince had a mind to reſt himſelf, but at laſt he was forc'd to yield to their impatient deſires. He went out to them, aſſuring them that he was well and in health, but the Army was not ſatisfied, he was conſtrain'd to get on horſeback, and to ride about the Camp. Then the apprehenſions, that had poſſeſſed the Souls of the Officers and Souldiers, vaniſh'd away by the preſence of him, who they loved as tenderly as their lives, and were ſucceeded by extraordinary motions of joy, ſo that the Sky was filled with their loud acclamations and expreſſions of gladneſs.

The Offender was examined at the rack, he confeſſed all the deſign, and required courageouſly that he might be brought to his end: according to his depoſition they went to ſeek the places where his aſſociates were yet in number about three hundred, they were all bound and carried to priſon, and inquiry was made for all others round about the City. Some of the Inhabitants, who had been acquainted with the buſineſs, and had received Letters from the *Sultan* were not ſpared. But the Prince, who was naturally an Enemy to all cruelty, ſeeing that there was likely much blood to be ſpill'd, reſolved to depart out of *Alexandria*, with an intent not to return to the City again, till all the guilty perſons ſhould be diſcovered and puniſh'd.

This great City appeared with a sad countenance. In every Corner persons were taken, and all suspected inhabitants were led to prison. As soon as they were convicted they were executed publickly. *Arsembei* suffered first. He was strangled, and for a remembrance of his horrid Treason, his head was fixt upon a Pole in the Market place, and his Body quartered. All the Complices were dealt with in the same manner, but some of the Citizens, that were unsuspected, were cast into prison, and afterwards sold for slaves, and transported into another Country.

This was the end of this Tragedy, which was to begin by the Princes life, but the Majesty of his looks, and his courageous resistance, help'd to save him. *I have oftentimes*, saith *Albacut*, *heard him confess, that when* Arsambei *stood before him, he imagined, that this Villain had some wicked design in his mind, and that if he had not been afraid to break his promise that he had given him, and injure that Reputation that he held in the World, he would have caused him to have been stayed, as soon as he saw him appear, but he thought it sufficient to look upon him. He protested for his part, that he feared no assassinations. That he had a good Angel at his Elbows, meaning his guardian Angel, whom he named* Meaniel, *he said, that he had orders from God to preserve him from all ambushes.* He caused his Image to be carried in his colours, and pluck'd down all signs of the *Cressant*, the badge of the *Ottoman* Family, and instead thereof, he erected an image of his Guardian Angel.

All this time *Axalla* was not idle. He had marched a great way into *Africa* with the Army, and had subdued all the lower part of *Lybia*. The Emperour

perour went thither, and finding it a delicious Country he ſtaid there to refreſh his Army, and diſpers'd them about, that they might have more conveniency: Onely *Axalla* was with the Body of an Army. So that in expectation of the arrival of *Calibes*, he was buſie in ſetting theſe conquered Countries in peace. The heats at that time were ſo violent, that the Souldiers were much the worſe particularly the *Parthians*, who live in a Country inclinable to cold more than to heat.

When the Prince underſtood, that all was quiet in *Alexandria*, he return'd to the City, where at his firſt arrival, ſeveral Ambaſſadors came to him, from the Lords and Princes of *Lybia* and *Barbary*, to ſubmit to him, and acknowledge him for their Soveraign. *Tamerlan* requir'd Hoſtages from all whoſe Countries where bordering upon *Ægypt*, but he deſired from the reſt nothing but their Faith, and ſome outward expreſſions of their good will. Thus every one yielded Homage to this new Monarch, and by their ſubmiſſions publiſh'd abroad the largeneſs of his Dominions.

After all this, the Prince ſeem'd to have a ſtronger inclination than ever he had before to return into his own Country. Age and Labour incline us naturally to ſeek for reſt. He often ſaid, that he had heard his Father declare, That when a man is five and forty, if Fortune hath favour'd him till then, he ought, if he be wiſe, to reſt ſatisfied with the favours he hath received, and endeavour only to preſerve what he hath, than to get more. That unconſtant Fortune at that age is apt to change as ſuddenly as our bodies, and that the wrinkles, which appeared upon his face, told him, that his youthful

days began to pass away, and that this decline made him fear that Fortune would retake from all that she had given him. He was the more earnest and passionate to return home, because he was resolved to imbellish the City of *Samarcand*, and eternize there his name and memory; for that purpose he sought every where for all skilful Artists, and men of industry, and of comely Bodies and Countenances, to carry them to this City, that they might adorn it, and cause it to be distinguish'd from all others. As this had been his Cradle he was resolved to make it his Tomb, and to restore to the same ground, that which he had borrowed from it. A certain Heathen, unto whom the Prince had shewn the stately Sepulcher, that he built for his body, which this man wondred at, and asked him, where he would build another for his Soul. The Prince, with his eyes lifted up towards heaven, answered him, *That his Soul should return to the place from whence it was taken, seeing that it was of a Divine Substance.*

I may take notice of one remarkable passage more, he was reproved by a noted Priest of the *Mahometan* Faith, because he forced not all the People that he subdued to make profession of the same Religion. *My Friend*, replied *Tamerlan* to him, *I shall never do that. I cannot but think that God delights in the diversity of Religions amongst men. He hates only those that have no Religion, or that deny him, such Persons I would willingly banish out of the World. It is not but that I am fully perswaded, that the way and method of my worshipping of him is the most pleasing to him. But I shall give liberty to every one in all places of my Empire to adore him as they all believe that he*

ought

ought to be, in case their intent be to honour him alone and not to disgrace him by irreverence.

Therefore he thought that every one ought to continue in the Religion where he was born, and brought up, in case one only God was worshipped. I thought fit to publish these particulars of *Tamerlans* Religion, for there was no man, that spoke of God with more respect and dread, which was so great, that none could imagine a more sincere and more extraordinary devotion than that which he expressed outwardly.

To return to the history. The Emperour received news that *Calibes*, in whose place the great *Chamberlain* govern'd the Army, was in his way and near *Alexandria*, which report caused an universal joy all over the Army, for his coming was likely to hasten their departure to their native Country, where they should rest from their labours and dangers, after the conquests of so many Nations. *Axalla* was commanded at the same time to return with his Army, and the parties that were dispersed abroad had orders sent them to gather together in one body: the Emperor thought fit to take out of *Alexandria* seven or eight thousand Inhabitans, placing other people in their stead, and to leave in Garrison six thousand horse and ten thousand foot.

Whiles these things were doing *Calibes* arrived, and was received by the Prince in that kind manner, that his services had deserved, he gave him his Commission and Instructions what to do in his absence, and placed him under him as his Lieutenant General, in *Alexandria*, and the Country round about. *Zamolxan* a man of great reputation, he appointed forty thousand horse and fifty thousand foot,

foot, to remain behind with *Calibes*. Some of them were placed in Garrisons, in the strong Castles, and near the Sea-side, and the rest were to be in readiness together in one body, and to be commanded by *Zamolxan* until *Calibes* should return from *Cairo*, whither the Prince intended to lead him, to take possession there of his Government of *Ægypt* and *Syria*, and of all the Countries of *Lybia* and *Barbary*, which had submitted to him.

When the Emperour had thus settled all things, and understood, that all his new subjects were ravish'd in admiration of his kindness, moderation and justice, and were not sorry to be govern'd, and overcome by a Prince so worthy to command, because of his rare qualities, and good inclinations, when he had caused the Inhabitans of *Cairo*, *Alexandria*, and *Syria*, and of the Country thereabouts, to swear to be faithful to him, he caused his Army to march homewards.

The *Van* was commanded by *Axalla*, and the body of the Army, by the Prince of *Tanis*; he had given his orders to *Calibes*, how he desired that he should behave himself in his Government, and at his departure he embraced him as a friend. From *Cairo* he marched strait to Jerusalem, whither he returned with few of his followers, he staid there eleven dayes to visit again the Sepulcher of Jesus Christ the God of Christians, every day he went thither to perform his devotions He caused also some of the Ground of this place to be carried with him to *Samarcand* to honour and sanctifie, as he said the places there of devotion.

He visited again the ruines of the Temple of *Soloman*, that he might after that model build one like

to

to it, at *Samarcand*. When he considered this City which heretofore was the Royal Palace of *David* and *Solomon*, he lamented to look upon the ruines, because it was not yet in its former splendor and glory, which caus'd it to be admired heretofore by all the World. Such was the Love and Inclination; that he had for things esteem'd Holy and Religious. He had a contempt for the Jews and could not endure them, for he expressed a detestation of their cruelty in murdering him, who came to save them. The Emperour therefore out of his affection for *Jerusalem*, made it a free City without taxes, or subsides, or Garrison. He gave great gifts to the Monasteries, whom he respected while he continued there.

As soon as the great *Chamberlain* was received as General in the Army, which *Calibet* had left him, he went to besiege *Meleg*, a Town scituate upon the River *Euphrates*, but when he had batter'd the Walls and reduc'd the Inhabitants to great wants, he was forced to raise the Seige, for the City was relieved by the Princes of *Quilcan* and *Caldar*, and others, who had united together, being thereunto incouraged by a false report that the Emperour had been defeated. This news had caused all the neighbouring Provinces to rise up in Arms; before they were afraid to stir, but now they gathered together in an Army and march'd against the great *Chamberlan* to fight him, he had no orders from *Tamerlan* to adventure his Army in a battle, he therefore retreated back and retrench'd himself along the River *Euphrates*, waiting there for the coming of the Enemies. They attempted several times in vain, to force him to go out of the Trenches. But he

sent

ſent News to the Emperour of the preſent poſture of his affairs, that he might have ſome ſuccour ſent him, for he thought that the Enemies would not be ſo bold to adventure upon him in his ſtrength. But they were ſo proud to have obliged him to depart from before *Meleg*, that they reſolved to aſſault his Camp, and the rather, becauſe they imagin'd that they had filled his Army with fears and apprehenſions. They thought to ſucceed and to increaſe thereby the Glory of their Souldiers, becauſe the *Chamberlain* was but a young man, whom they judged to be without experience in War, and fitter for a peaceable Court, where he had been train'd up, than for a Camp and an Army. They had never been ſo bold if *Calibes* had yet commanded there, for amongſt all the Commanders of *Tamerlan*, *Calibes* was look'd upon to be the moſt experienced and valiant Captain next to *Axalla*. In a morning therefore they lodg'd their Army near the *Chamberlains* Camp. He had given a ſtrict command that no Soldier ſhould offer to go out, but to reſiſt ſtoutly if they were aſſaulted. He drew up all his men in order of battle, and with the advice and direction of ſome of his chief Officers placed them in ſuch a manner that he could ſuccour and relieve them in any place, where they might be aſſaulted, in this poſture they waited for the Enemy, who made to them with fury and great cryes. There was fifty thouſand foot divided into two parties, that they might attack the Camp in two ſeveral places. But the *Tartarian* Camp was ſo ordered that there was a place for the Cavalry to go out and fight under the ſhelter of the Trenches. The Enemies had not minded it, therefore they had ſent

a-

away theirs beyond a ſmall River, whether they imagin'd that the *Tartars* would retreat in haſte, for fear of their foot, and by that means they would purſue and cut them off. In the *Chamberlains* Camp were eighteen thouſand horſe and forty thouſand foot, with a great deal of baggage and many priſoners, whom the great *Chamberlain* had cauſed to work ſo briskly in the Trenches, that they were ſtronger than the Walls of the Town of *Meleg*. The fight laſted three hours, the *Tartars* defended themſelves bravely. And ſo many of the Enemies Army were deſtroyed, that the *Chamberlain* imagin'd that he was able to aſſault them in his turn; for that purpoſe, whiles his men dallied with the aſſailours, to keep them in heart, he commanded out his Cavalry by that way mentioned before, which broke in upon the Enemies infantry, ſo furiouſly, that they killed them at their pleaſure, till they were weary. At that inſtant he underſtood that the Enemies Horſe were coming back over the River to help their foot, which cauſed him to ſound a retreat into the Trenches, for he was not willing to hazard any thing but upon good terms, knowing that this Cavalry was compoſed of thirty thouſand men. The Enemy loſt this day five and twenty thouſand of their beſt Souldiers, not only by the ſally of the Horſe, but alſo at the aſſaulting of the Camp. The General or chief Commander of this expedition, being the King of *Armenia* named *Eleazar*, loſt his Life in giving great teſtimonies of his courage and valour.

As ſoon as the Emperour had received the news ſent to him from the great *Chamberlain* of the riſing of the Princes of *Perſia* and *Armenia*, and of the releif

lief of *Meleg*, he dispatched away *Axalla* with the *Parthians* Cavalry, but he had not marched three dayes journy, but he received the news of their overthrow. He sent word of it to *Tamerlan* expecting at *Damascus* other orders.

As soon as the Emperour understood these things he caused them to be publish'd abroad, and sent word to *Calibes*, that he might, by dispersing the news amongst the Troops, satisfy all discontented minds, who were perswaded that the Chamberlains Army was totally defeated, the Emperour expressed more joy of this Victory than for all that he ever won in his own person, some think that it proceeded from a satisfaction to have not been mistaken in the choice he made of the great Chamberlain, to act in an employ that seem'd to be beyond the capacity of a young man, for had he miscarried many would have exclaimed against the Prince, to have pitched upon him, his wise conduct and valour won him the praises of every one, and of *Tamerlan* also, who could not forbear to commend him. It was then reported that the Emperour having a great desire to return to his Kingdome and Patrimony, that he might secure it by his presence; for fear that a longer absence or some other disgrace, should beget an inclination in some of his people to be troublesome, was resolved for the future to govern his Armies by his Lieutenants, and therefore before the Winter he would pass over the Mountains of *Imaus*. He sent orders to *Axalla* to return and stop in the road, in all strong places of *Judea* he places his Garrisons, and in *Syria*. Of other Cities that he had no mind to guard he pulled down the Walls, some people whom he suspected, he carried with him, put others

in

in their room, and in ſeveral Provinces he made new Collonies, as he had done in *Ægypt* and elſewhere. He ſent home about this time, the ſuccours of the Greek Emperour, he cauſed the meaneſt Souldier to receive his pay, and treated ſo liberally the Officers of the late Prince *Andronicus*, that they departed wonderfully well ſatisfied, that *Tamerlan* was as much to be admired for his magnificences: And gratitude, as for his other rare qualities, about this time his Chancellour, whoſe advice he followed in many things, moved him in this juncture of time, to ſeize upon the Empire of *Greece* before he returned to *Tartary*, ſhewing him how needful thoſe Countries would be to him, now that he had conquered the Territories of the *Sultan*, that great Princes are not to keep their word and promiſes, no longer than they are uſeful for their Countery. He repreſented to him, that he was the man, whom all the World look'd upon, as their Prince, that many Nations lived peacably under his protection, that he ought not to neglect an advantage which would procure to the *Parthians* and *Tartarians* much honour and glory, and that it was needful for him to take that Empire into his hands, that he might make *Conſtantinople*, the chief ſeat of all the conquered Countries, that he might have nothing but the Sea to limit his dominions. *Tamerlan* returned him this anſwer, that he deſired that the Empire of the *Parthians* might have narrower bounds in obſerving the rules of Juſtice, than to inlarge them by the commiſſion of a crime. That the Emperour of *Greece* was his friend, his neighbour and his Ally, that if he did offer to forget himſelf, and break the bonds of amity

that

that tied them together, and the faith which had been solemnly sworn, he would make him experience his power, and that God would doubtless assist him in the prosecution of a just cause. I think, said he, to him, my friend, I cannot do any thing more honourable, and more glorious, for my Empire and for the *Parthian* Nation, than to make Posterity to understand, that an Emperour of that Nation came from a far Country on purpose to give a check to the boldness, and insolency of *Bajazet*, and to free the Nobility of *Greece* from his unmerciful Tyranny, and though I could have taken all their Country into my hand with ease, I have abstained from the surprisal of a Great Empire, and of the most beautiful City of the world, so that I have neglected all the motions of ambition to follow the rules of Justice and equity, I may with reason boast, that I have not gained a more glorious Victory than this, though I have conquered so many Nations and differing people, and that my Armies have alwayes been happy and successful. It is an ordinary thing to win battles, and subdue Kingdomes, and Empires, many have performed these things before me, but few of those Conquerours are to be found, who have caused their ambition to submit, and be ruled by their justice, they have for the most part when power was in their hands for their conveniency, seized upon other mens estates, and plundered the Provinces belonging to other men. I shall recommend this example to Posterity, that equity hath been alwayes the rule of my actions, the faith I keep to my enemies makes them to become my most assured friends, what effect, think you, that it will have upon those who are already

already mine, Will not my honourable and juſt proceedings ſecure and increaſe my well wiſhers? Approve therefore my dealing, and perſwade me not for the future to act contrary to it. The Chancellour, who was a wiſe man, but inclinable to ambition, ſubmitted to ſuch ſtrong reaſons and departed.

He told *Albacent* immediately after all the particulars of this diſcourſe, he hath therefore inſerted it in his Hiſtory, that the World might know the excellent temper and the noble courage of this Prince. Therefore he, who ſhall ſee in him ſo many rare vertues, will not eaſily aſcribe, to meer chance or blind fortune, which favours wicked men as often as it doth the beſt natures, his great ſucceſſes and glorious conqueſts: but he will doubtleſs confeſs, that his proſperities were bleſſings of Heaven, and rewards of his Piety and Vertues in this life.

When the Emperour was at *Damaſcus*, he utterly ruined that City, becauſe it had reſiſted him, his Army lodg'd there eight days. *Axalla*, who expected him there, had orders to ſend ſix thouſand horſe to the aſſiſtance of the great Chamberlain: That he might paſs more ſecurely and more boldly over *Euphrates* to the ſiege of *Meleg*, he took it in three days as well as *Raffan*. All the Country thereabouts ſubmited to the Prince, but chiefly the Cities upon the River *Euphrates*. The Prince of *Tanais* commanded his party to ſtay for him at the paſſage, that he might march with all his forces together towards the Emperour, who embraced him very kindly, and in the preſence of all his chief Officers, extolled his valour and courage. He ſent him afterwards to his Government with order to ſend back the ſix thouſand horſe, which had been ſent to

him, that they might joyn with the Van-guard commanded by *Axalla*, from whence they had been taken. The whole Army marched in a line, *Axalla* upon the right hand, the great Chamberlain upon the left, and the Emperour in the middle of the Troops. The Prince of *Tanais* was with him, I shall not busie my self in reckoning up all the Cavalry and Companies of Infantry in the Army, nor the great Captains and Princes who commanded there, for fear of being too prolix in this narration. I shall only say, that the Emperour arrived at *Meleg*, where he went over *Euphrates* and separated ten thousand horse and fifteen thousand foot, to send back to *Calibes*, that he might use them in case of need. The Prince of *Aracen* had the command of them.

He was ordered first to march to Babylon and take it. The Emperour remain'd still at *Meleg*, to wait and see the success of this Commission from *Babylon*, the Prince of *Aracen* was to send to *Calibes* to know whether he should not want greater assistances, for *Tamerlan* had notice that the *Sultan* was in motion with a strong party. *Calibes* sent word that he saw no likelihood of any Rebellion, because from all parts every one submitted to the Empire of *Tamerlan*. After a few days repose, in the same place, he caus'd his Army to march directly towards *Armenia* sending a party through *Diabreroth*, to chastise some petty Kings, who had revolted from him, and subdue the Provinces that reach as far as the mouth of *Euphrates*. All these things succeeded very happily and the little Kings sent their Ambassadours to yield and promise him obedience. But for the better understanding of this History, we must know that since the Christian or Roman Empire, these people had

been

been govern'd sometimes by the Turks, sometimes by the *Sultans*, now by the *Caliphs*, at another time by the Lieutenant Generals of the Romans, so has the strongest alwaies held and commanded them: they were continually pillaged and ruined by the several invasions of Forreign Armies. But the Emperour seized into his hands the passages over *Euphrates*, that he might with more ease succour *Ægypt* in case of need, which happen'd but little after, for the Army was not farther than *Armenia*, when a messenger came post from *Calibes* to desire help. The Prince of *Aracen* was immediately dispatch'd and sent towards *Ægypt*, and *Tamerlan* went himself to *Babylon*, to terrifie the more the Inhabitants in case they would offer to withstand him, and to assure them of his bounty and mercy in case they would accept of it. He sent away *Axalla* with the Vanguard in the way towards *Armenia*, to proceed on without contrary orders.

In Eleven dayes *Tamerlan* marched to *Babylon*, which yeilded, as all other places thereabouts. He appointed the great *Chamberlain* to fortifie *Romedat*, because it was an advantageous post, and gave him the Government of all the Country, near *Euphrates* as far as *Armenia*, recommending to him the Inhabitants of *Babylon*, who had shewn a great respect to their new Master, for they were for the most part descended from the *Tartars*. For this City heretofore was taken by the Prince of *Sachetay* his Father, who transported thither a *Parthian* Collony to secure it, but since that time, they were so much vex'd by the *Persians* and *Mamelucks*, that they were obliged to submit to them. Nevertheless, they had a great affection for their

Country, and a remembrance of their Country-men: for this cause, was the Prince favourable to them, and look'd not upon their City as a conquered place, but as his own Patrimony newly recovered from the Enemy. It was first taken by *Sahali*, one of his Fathers Lieutenant Generals, who had left a good name and esteem behind him in *Sachetay*, because of his great services that he render'd to his Country. From this City the Prince made haste towards *Armenia*, for *Axalla* had sent him word that a *Persian* Prince, named *Guines*, was coming to make peace with him, and render him homage for his Country. This news caused him with all speed to march towards him, and out of a respect to him to meet him in the way. For *Tamerlan* had a great esteem for him, because of his reputation of holiness, he thought himself happy to be acquainted with such a religious and devout person. He left the conduct of the Army with the Prince of *Tanais* to follow him, softly advancing before to the place where *Axalla* waited for *Guines* to receive and welcome him.

The Emperour had also dispatched the Prince of *Liseacesm* and his Chancellour, to assure him of his affection and joy to see him. For he was resolved to shew him all the honour that he could possibly express, and to gratifie him in all things. *Tamerlan* had news brought him that he was hard by coming to him with a mean attendance accompanied with beasts of all kinds with which, he said, he instructed men. The Emperour went to meet him in great State.

As soon as *Guines* perceived him at a distance, he lifted up his eyes to Heaven, and prayed for the Princes

ces greatneſs, and the propagation of his Prophets Religion, but he excommunicated and curſed the *Turks*, as the Enemies of his Faith. The Emperour was ſurpriſed to ſee him in ſuch a contemptible garb and appearance, but he was ſo far from deſpiſing him for it, that he honoured him the more. And becauſe he was naturally a great admirer of ſuch ſort of people, he gave him a preſent which the other accepted with Joy. He gave him fifteen or ſixteen thouſand Priſoners taken from the Enemy, that he might inſtruct them in the Principles of his Religion. This gift was ſo much the more grateful to him, becauſe thereby his power increas'd, and he hoped to make theſe men imitate his manners and receive his Doctrine. But this ſeeming devotion was not ſo pleaſing to the Courtiers, as it was to the Emperour. For they had good reaſon to blame the proceedings of this *Perſian* Prince, who, under a colour of holineſs and piety, knew how to take from his neighbours their Country and Eſtates.

They blamed alſo *Tamerlan*, for ſuffering himſelf to be cozen'd with his hypocriſies, and govern'd by that ſubtil *Bigot*. But when all things are conſidered, that reverence that is due to Religion, and *Tamerlans* charitable thoughts of others anſwerable to his own ſincerity, will cauſe all wonder to ceaſe, for his undeſerved reſpects to this great *Cheat*. I am not of opinion of thoſe that believe that a Sovereign Prince might ought not to have ſo much regard to Religion, for it is a thing that never any man had cauſe to complain of.

It was not without deſign that *Guines* viſited the Emperour with all that outward appearance of humility

mility and devotion. Onely his private benefit caused him to take on this Mask. He was not strong enough to maintain a neutrality or stop the passage of the Army. He desired therefore to insinuate himself into the favour, and obtain the protection of its chief Commander. And as he found the Prince inclinable to Piety, he thought that the best means to secure his interest would be to make a profession of Vertue and Religion. He seldome went from the Emperours Elbows, and declared himself to be the Protectour of the Nations that confine upon *Persia*, exhorting them all to imitate his example, and yield obedience to the Emperour. This forced and interested humility proved advantageous to him and to his successours, for it laid a foundation to his and their future greatness, by his means all *Persia* submitted to him, *Tauris* onely excepted. This is a great rich and powerful City, having a great many Towns belonging to it. It was governed by a Commonwealth, and could not suffer the rising greatness of *Guines*, whose designs it labour'd to thwart.

There was a Captain named *Talismahar* chosen by the Inhabitants, for the General of their *Militia*. And at that juncture of time they had made him their Soveraign to command them in chief. This Captain understood how welcome *Guines* had been to the Prince, and that without doubt, he would not fail to solicite him, to besiege *Tauris*, and alter the Government. But he hoped that *Tamerlan*, very passionate for his return, would not insist nor continue obstinate in this design, if he should perceive the people resolved in a couragious defence. As

As soon as he had setled every thing in his new principality, he dispatched away Embassadours to *Tamerlan* to understand his intentions. They had orders to tell him, that *Guines* by a pretence of devotion and reformation in Religion, usurped the lands of his neighbours, and by a damnable hypocrisie seized upon other mens estates and inheritances. The Emperour seem'd to be surprised to hear that which he desired not to believe concerning *Guines*, and sent back word to *Talismahar*, to come to him in person, and accuse *Guines* of the things he laid to his charge. He sent him also word, that he intended to re-enter into the possession of his ancient Rights in *Persia*, and that he would force all those that would offer to withstand him or refuse to render what belong'd to him. He was very attentive to the Embassadours discourse, for by it, he discover'd the means to enlarge his Empire through their divisions. He understood likewise, *That the Cloak of Religion is fit to hide many base Cheats.* But he would not discover his intentions, only he march'd forward with *Guines* in his company, and wheresoever he went, all people and persons submitted and yielded obedience. According to his usual custome, he put new Colonies into all fortified Towns, which might give him any jealousie. The examample of *Guines* had a great influence upon all the Inhabitants, to oblige them to obey *Tamerlans* Commands.

But his most earnest desire was to get *Taurit*, a considerable City, for its greatness, strength, and power, and the chief of the Country. He endeavoured to win it by policy, for he sent thither his

Agents to promise *Talismahar*, another Government in his Empire. Which doubtless, he would have accepted willingly, had it not been for *Guines*, his mortal Enemy, whom he saw so welcome to the Prince. The fear therefore of his malice, caused him to perswade the Inhabitants to endure all miseries rather than to fall under the command of that false Prophet. The Emperour was vexed to understand their resolution, and that *Guines*'s favour with him and company was the greatest obstacle to the surrending of this great City. *Tamerlan* acquainted him with it very kindly to be sooner rid of him, for that purpose he loaded him with honours and gifts, and obliged him to return to his own Country after fourteen or fifteen days abode with him, *Guines*'s Country stretches it self from *Sanéausan*, as far as the *Caspian* Sea. *Axalla* was then commanded to go forward with his *Vanguard* into the Territory of *Tauris*, to destroy all that should offer to make any resistance with fire and sword. By this means, and the advice of *Guines*, he subdued the Provinces of *Glauture* and *Taperestan*, which till then resisted the designs and invasions of the *Tartars*.

As soon as *Talismahar* understood that the Army was approaching into his Country, he resolved to draw towards them with his Cavalry and Infantry to strengthen the places which might stop and hold out against the Enemy. He had with him thirty thousand good stout horse able to make resistance, commanded as they were by an experienced General. The Tartarian Army was tired out with their tedious journey and continual march besides they wanted provisions in this

this season, in the beginning of the winter not fit for a Camp. But *Talismahar* was chiefly troubled at the unconstancy of the Inhabitants of *Tauris*, who were inclinable, if any mishap should fall upon his Army, to rise in armes against him and mutiny in the City. This apprehension staid him in the place, and caused him to send against the *Tartars* his Cavalry, under the command of his Lieutenant, named *Camares*, a man of experience and faithful. He order'd him to weary his enemies as much as possible, and not to venture to fight, but upon surprizals, and in cases of advantage. For *Talismahar* knew for certain, that a great Army, that must needs cover over a great compass of ground, could not but scatter about. His design therefore was to cut off the loose Troops and the skirts of the Army.

The Emperour foresaw his intent, therefore he wisely commanded *Axalla* to be upon his guard, and to take heed left his men should be surprized unawares, for he was already in the Country belonging to *Tauris*, and had sent his summons to a Town, named *Cafechion*, which *Camares* had strengthen'd with a party of Souldiers. The Governour refused to yield, which caus'd *Axalla* to block up the place, and with all speed he raised a mount on a sudden, from whence the *Tartars* discovered their enemies upon the walls, and killed great numbers of them. But this disadvantage was so far from affrighting them, that it seem'd to encourage them the more. So that *Axalla* weary of their obstinacy commanded a general Assault, which forced them rather by the numbers of the besiegers, than for want of courage in the besieged.

beſieged. The *Tartarians* ſpared none within the Walls, but kill'd every man. Whiles they were buſily imployed in plundering the Town, *Camares* arriv'd with a party of horſe to relieve it, not knowing that it was taken. In his way he met with ten thouſand Horſe ſent to wait in the road. For *Axalla* had imagin'd he would make this attempt. *Camares* ſent four thouſand of his men to attack them, which they performed ſo couragiouſly, that they drove them to their body of horſe, where *Axalla* was in perſon: in the mean whiles *Camares* ſtaid with the reſt of his Army in good order, animating and encouraging his men, But when he ſaw what had happen'd, he was afraid of the coming of the whole *Tartarian* Army, therefore he ſounded a retreat, and marched ſtill in good order, with an eye upon *Axalla*'s motion not to be ſurprized. This experienced Captain ſoon perceived his intent, therefore he order'd ſix thouſand *Parthian* horſe to follow cloſe after him, and to aſſault, if they could, the enemies Cavalry, which was accordingly performed with courage. The fight therefore was renewed between theſe ſix thouſand *Parthians* and the four thouſand enemies horſe without any appearance of victory on either ſide, but they ſtill continued in their retreat obſerving a good order till they came to the paſſage of a River, where *Camares* ſeem'd to intrench himſelf; for that purpoſe he drew up all his men in order of battel, and ſeized upon all the paſſages ſending often his Troops to relieve them that were too hardly beſet by the *Tartarians:* but in the mean while *Axalla* had cauſed his Infantry to advance, and to force one of the paſſages, but they found that *Camares* with

with his men were gone a great way, having left behind them a garrison in *Gorgechin*, a small Town, able to hold out eight or ten dayes; this was the way that he took to weary and tire out the *Tartarian* Army: besides he made a destruction every where of provisions and fodder, that his enemies Army might meet with no relief in their march, hoping by this crafty proceeding to lengthen the war. But the Inhabitants of *Gorgechin* had no such resolution, they had fresh before their eyes the sad example of a neighbouring Town sufficiently punished for its obstinacy in resisting the *Tartarian* Army, they were not willing to fall into the same calamity, but to improve the folly of their neighbours. This caused them to desire to capitulate, which was granted, and the Town yielded up.

Axalla there understood that *Camares* was at *Archiech*, ten leagues off. He detached ten thousand *Parthian* Horse, six thousand *Scythian*, and ten thousand chosen *Stradiots* to see to surprize him. The better to compass his design he sent a report before, that *Gorgechin* did yet hold out against him in expectation of being relieved, only to cause *Camares* to stay. He advanced still with that chosen party, and gave order to the rest of his Army to follow speedily after him. By this subtlety he surprized the Enemies unawares in a morning, as they lay encamped about a Country Town. In the way he met with a thousand Horse, whom he put to flight, and pursued as far as their Camp. Then he drew up his men in battle, in the avenues and wayes thereabouts, that his enemies might not escape without fighting. And because they were

were ſo pen'd up, that there was but one way for *Camares* to retreat with his Army. *Axalla* placed there all his infantry in the enemies view: when he underſtood that *Camares* had nothing but horſe with him, he cauſed ſeveral Trenches to be drawn to hinder the horſe from getting out. Of all theſe paſſages he had ſent word to the Emperour, who was marching ſpeedily after him, having ſent before in all haſte, the Prince of *Tanais*, with twenty thouſand horſe.

Camares thought that the whole Army had ſurrounded him, ſeeing therefore a neceſſity, either to yield without reſiſtance, or fight with diſadvantage, there being but one way for him to eſcape out, which was alſo ſtrongly guarded, he reſolved to ſave himſelf betimes. For that purpoſe he had made a Trench a long a little hill, under which he drew up his men with a full purpoſe to break through four thouſand *Tartarian* horſe placed there to guard that paſſage. He thought that he could eaſily cut in pieces ſo ſmall a number, that ſtood in his way, Therefore about midnight, the Moon yielding a great light, as *Axalla* was riding about to viſit his Guards with two thouſand Horſe, he underſtood, that the Enemy was kindling fires about that Trench. He ſoon perceived their intent, therefore he gave orders to have all his Horſemen ready mounted. This could not be ſo ſoon done, but the enemies were making a way through the Guards at the paſſage. They aſſaulted them at firſt with two thouſand Horſe, who found the *Tartars* for the moſt part a foot and unprovided, ſo that they eaſily ran over them. But as they were advancing, they met with another Trench

Trench which had been drawn in oppoſition to theirs. This ſtopp'd them a while and gave time and leaſure to the *Tartars* to arm and ſuccour their Companions. Their enemies wanted no courage to reſiſt and aſſault them, for they won the Trenches, which they laboured with the aſſiſtance of ſome foot to level. In this place the hurly burly was great, and the fight bloudy, for the Infantry being ſuddainly broken, could not eaſily rally, but were almoſt all cut in peices. But as they advanced further than they ſhould have done they gave an occaſion and time to ſix thouſand of *Axalla's* horſe, who were upon Guard about half a mile diſtant, to come in good time to charge them in diſorder.

In this manner *Camares* paſſed over the firſt Trenches, and was advancing forward to diſingage his men, when *Axalla* came in ſuddainly to him with two or three thouſand horſe, whom he had found ready, ſeeing therefore the danger of his men he charged without diſpute, the enemy who was looking about for a way to retreat with no intent to hazard a battle. Doubtleſs, they had eſcaped through a paſſage, where they thought there had been no body, if they had not met with ſix thouſand men, whom *Axalla* had appointed to ſtop there. *Cameres* attackt them in vain, he was driven back with loſs, which cauſed him to try another place lower with a purpoſe to fight his way through, if he could not break through otherwiſe. When he ſaw himſelf purſued ſo cloſe at the heels by *Axalla*, with ſeven thouſand *Parthian* horſe and *Stradiots*, he faced about with twelve or thirteen thouſand men that he had yet left, and then like a furious beaſt in deſpair, he fell upon *Axalla's* party.

ty. In this moment of time he shewed his wisdome and courage, and received the enemies charge without losing much ground. At the second charge *Axalla's* horse was killed under him with a Lance, but he was as soon mounted again, had it not been for the coming in of *Damacen*, whom he expected, and who had orders to follow him with eight or ten thousand fresh horse, he had been forced to a retreat. When this party came in they found *Axalla's* men broken, though they yet obstinately held out against the furious enemy. But the coming of these fresh Troops, routed and utterly defeated them. When *Camares* saw unto what necessity he was driven, he endeavoured to rally all his broken Army, and to make way through his enemies, but in this last attempt, he was killed in the fight performing actions worthy of an immortal Name. All this was done in the night by the light of the Moon. The Prince of *Tanais* was then in the Camp to guard it. The next day the Emperour himself arrived, where the battle was fought, when he saw the number of the slain, he could not sufficiently praise *Axalla* for his wisdome, care, and carriage, but he would not pardon the unworthiness, the negligence, and slothfulness of those Captains, that were then upon the Guard, who had been surprized unawares. He caused two to be examin'd and tried, they were found guilty, and punished according to the Law of Arms.

The Inhabitants of *Archiecho* had received into their Town, five or six thousand of the sad remains of the *Persian* Army, but when they saw the rest defeated, and *Camares* head they had no courage to withstand or make resistance, they desired therefore Articles. The

The Emperour granted them peace upon condition, that thoſe Souldiers, that were within their Walls, ſhould not return to *Tauris*, but to any other place whither they deſired to go. They intreated leave to march to *Lovain*, and promiſed to perform whatſoever the Inhabitants of *Tauris* ſhould agree to. This misfortune of *Camares* aſtoniſh'd them all, they could not but wonder that he had ſhut himſelf up. If he had had, as they thought, more diſcretion, he had eaſily found work for the Enemy a while, and doubtleſs in a retreat he might have met with an opportunity to fall upon the *Tartars* with advantage. At that inſtant the Emperour cauſed his Army to decamp, and went to lodge at eight leagues from *Tauris*. The body of the Army was at *Sederva*, and the *Van* at *Chiara*.

As ſoon as *Axalla* had appeared with his *Vanguard*, before the Walls of *Tauris*. The whole City was full of fears, but much more when *Tamerlan* had ſent in a Trumpeter with a meſſage. They were then in their Town houſe. The faction of *Guines*, though the weakeſt began to lift up their heads, when they ſaw the contrary party troubled, requiring earneſtly that the Emperours commands might be obeyed. When they ſaw the others wavering they ſeized upon one of the Gates of *Tauris*, reſolved to let in *Tamerlan* with his Army, for they truſted in his generoſity and good diſpoſition. But that we may better underſtand in what trouble theſe people were in, we muſt know that as ſoon as they heard that *Tamerlan* was upon their borders, they choſe *Taliſmahar* for their Prince, who before had been but their General. They ſwore to him

him to die rather a thousand deaths than to yield to the Empire of the *Tartars*, or to hearken to any accommodation, when they saw how all things were changed, they repented of their former resolution, and of the choice they had made so unconstant are the minds of the common people. They were so much the more dissatisfied with *Talismahar*, because before he had declared that he was strong enough, not only to withstand the *Tartarians*, but also to drive them again into their Country. Now all these promises seem'd to be but vain, on the contrary they saw the enemies Army victorious and full of many sorts of people, *Camares* and his men lately overthrown, and the *Tartars* drawing near their Walls to block them up and punish them, if they offered to resist. They knew also that the Emperour had sent them word that if they would submit to him, he would deal with them kindly, and not suffer the Army to approach nearer than four leagues of their City. Their Priests were the most obstinate to hold out, for fear of being constrain'd to submit to the reformation of *Guines*. But his superstitions began to appear less frightful to these Inhabitants. They commonly said to one another: *Shall we for fear of that which may chance never to happen, run headlong into our certain ruine? Shall we be any longer cozen'd with the promises of our new Prince, who hath been defeated? Have we not heard of the plundering of* Cairo, *and of the many Towns which* Tamerlan *hath conquered? Who knows whither he will force us to be under* Guines? *Whither he will not rather choose to keep us in his own hands, that we may watch over that ambitious Prince, whose wicked designs, he perceives*

cloak'd

dook'd with an appearance of Devotion and counterfeit Piety? Let us free our ſelves from theſe fears by a bold reſolution. Let us acknowledge him for our Lord, who is the greateſt of all men, and is beſt able to maintain us in Peace and Plenty.

Theſe diſcourſes were openly ſpoken amongſt the people, and the chief men were not againſt this reſolution, though they found themſelves able to hold out a ſiege of three months and more, but they knew at laſt that they ſhould be forced to yield, for to expect *Tamerlans* Death, a young and luſty Prince, was a folly which they could not entertain. Therefore they concluded that the only means to ſave themſelves was to ſubmit to him. *Axalla*, who was the neareſt to the City, was informed of the things that happen'd there, by his ſpies, he was careful to let the Emperour know all. He thought it not expedient to be too haſty in this juncture, whiles ſo many differing paſſions diſturb'd the Inhabitants of *Tauris*, becauſe they would oblige them to ſurrender and yield up their City. When the faction of *Guines* ſaw the Citizens irreſolution, they ſent Deputies to *Tamerlan* to underſtand his pleaſure, and know what he would grant them. This faction was ſcarce the ſixth part of the Inhabitants, but a body politick, as well as phyſick, cannot be wounded in one of its members, but the whole muſt ſuffer an alteration, diviſion in a politick body is a gangrene, which increaſeth continually and devours the ſoundeſt part. When *Taliſmahar* underſtood of this deputation, which had been without his privity, he knew not what remedy to apply to the publick diſtemper.

He saw a powerful enemy at the Gates, a great division in the City, he was loath to increase and anger it, and cause a general revolt by the punishment of the guilty. He chose rather with patience to withdraw himself, and observe at a distance how affairs would be transacted. It concerned the faction of *Guines* not to stop where they had begun, therefore they concluded with the Emperour, though of themselves they could not make up above thirty thousand men in case of need, but the Prince had promised them all the assistance that they should want. So that when the Deputies were returned back, they proclaimed every where his mildness and goodness, that he intended not to do any wrong to the City, and that he desired but a submission from the Inhabitants, and that the new Prince should be yielded up to him. They said moreover, that tho some fantastical Fools had elected him, they would not, to please their humour, lose and destroy such a flourishing City, and so many brave men. When the tumult increas'd by little and little, the chief Inhabitants were perswaded in their assembly to send for the Deputies of the faction of *Guines*, to hear from their mouth, what the Emperour had spoken to them. They came with a great Train of their followers, and declared publickly, that the Emperour had assured them that he would not injure their persons or goods. That he would preserve their City in all its priviledges, in case they would own him for their Prince, and forsake him whom they had lately elected, and his party. As soon as these words were spoken every one cried out, *Let the Emperour live, and let them perish*, who will not acknowledge

ledge him. The tumult increaſed and became ſo violent, that neither the Senators nor the other Magiſtrates, nor the fear of the Souldiers were able to hinder it from ſpreading all over the City. *Taliſmahar* was fled into his Palace, and had it not been for ſome that deſired him to ſtay within, and not meddle with publick buſineſs, he would have imployed his Authority to ſtop the Tumult. But then he found his own weakneſs, and took a reſolution to depart out of the City into the Mountains. The Emperour was well informed of all theſe proceedings by *Axalla*, who went to acquaint him with his reſolution, if he had approved of it, to take *Taliſmahar* in his retreat. After a ſerious conſideration the Emperour choſe rather to ſuffer him to depart, and take *Tauris* without bloud ſhed, than to draw upon himſelf the hatred of the chief Inhabitants by the overthrow and Captivity of their late Prince. Therefore he commanded *Axalla* to let him eſcape, and ſuffered him not that day to ſend his Troops abroad. That the Citizens of *Tauris* might have more confidence in him, when they ſaw him deal ſo mildly and lovingly with his Enemies.

The next night *Taliſmahar* departed out of *Tauris* with ſome of his party, after he had governed as a Prince fifteen dayes, and as a General eight and twenty years with a continual proſperity. He had happily appoſed and reſiſted the Tyranny and Superſtition of *Guines*. And he might have yet defended himſelf from *Tamerlan*, had it not been for *Camares*'s overthrow and ſurpriſal in a narrow place, without Walls or Infantry. There is no action of our humane life, which requires a grea-

ter precaution and foresight than War, and yet events are very uncertain, and all things are hazardous. If *Camares* had continued in *Tauris*, and had not misemployed the forces that he led away, that Town had been able to withstand *Tamerlan* above six months. And in so long a time there might chance some misfortune or alteration in so large an Empire, as that of this great Monarch, besides the most numerous Armies are ruined with long Sieges, *Tamerlan*'s was tired out with a tedious march and continual labour. And the nearness of their own Country, from whence the Souldiers had been absent so long, would have obliged many and tempted them to disband and forsake their Colours. But the Princes good fortune had ordered matters otherwise, and the destiny of *Tauris* was that it should acknowledge another Lord without bloodshed. The new Prince *Talismahar* lately elected, had doubtless many worthy qualities, and was more deserving of this Principality than *Guines*.

At last all the City of *Tauris* agreed together, to send Deputies to the Emperour to intreat him to grant them eight days of respite, to treat with his Majesty about yielding up of that City into his hands, and the conditions. He made no difficulty to grant this request. The Inhabitants had desired this time, that they might find a way not to fall under the command of *Guines*, for they were afraid, that he would force upon them his superstition, and the reformation of their Prophets Law. Their Deputies were sent, and carried with them these Articles, which they requested of *Tamerlan*. First, they intreated his Imperial Majesty to give them a Governour of his own people, such a one

as

as he thought most fit, promising him all obedience, as the faithful Subjects of his Majesty, upon condition that they might not be separated from his Majesties Empire, nor be forced to yield to any other Prince, particularly *Guines*. This Article pleased the Emperour well, though he had suffered *Guines* to expect, that he would give him the government of that Commonwealth. Secondly, they requested, that they might be maintained in the enjoyment of all their priviledges, as true Subjects of the *Tartarian* Empire, under which they desired to live and die, and belong to the succeſſours of *Tamerlan*, and not to the Empire of *Persia*. The third related to the Tribute, which they were willing to pay, but intreated his Majesty to moderate the taxes in regard of the continual Wars, which they had maintained against *Guines*, in defence of their own libesties.

The Emperour after the hearing of these requests granted them freely, and his design was to prevent all future mischiefs and divisions amongst these people, he enacted that every one should enjoy a freedome to embrace what Religion he liked best, whither that which was according to *Guines*'s Rule, or the pure Law of *Mahomet*, or according to *Haly*'s interpretation. And that the Jews and Christians likewise should have full liberty to profess their Religions, as they had formerly.

All things being thus ordered, they submitted to the Prince, and the very next day three hundred of the chiefest Citizens, in the name of the other Inhabitants took the Oath of Allegiance.

The Emperour was desirous to make his Entry into the City, for that purpose, he sent before him *Axalla*, with five thousand horse and thirty thousand foot, to provide all things needful. The In-

habitants put all the fortifications into his hands, he took poſſeſſion of the Gates of the Town, and cauſed all the Arms of the Citizens to be brought, and that without noiſe, for the people were perſwaded that they ſhould live in peace, under a Prince able to keep them in peace, and defend them againſt all enemies. When all things were ready, the Emperour arrived with much Pomp, and attended upon by all his Courtiers. He was received with great applauſe, and adored by every one.

Tamerlan was not a little joyful to have gained ſo great a City to his Empire without bloudſhed, but the next day, the ſad news of his Unkles deceaſe daſh'd all his joyes. The Empreſs ſent him word, that his Death had occaſioned ſome ſtirs in the Empire, but ſhe had cruſh'd them, by the taking and impriſonment of the chief Authors. This loſs afflicted him, but not ſo much as if he had not prepared to receive it. Had it not been for the great care of the Empreſs, the Old-man in his painful and tedious ſickneſs had been carried away by Death long before. *Tamerlan* wiſely ſuppreſſed his grief as well as the news, and would not ſuffer it to fly abroad in his Army for fear of any new motions: But he pitch'd upon Prince *Axalla*, in whom he placed his greateſt confidence, to ſend him to the Empreſs to help her with his good advice, and aſſiſt her as Lieutenant General, with a large Commiſſion and Power, for he was well beloved by, and had a great Authority with the Souldiers. This faithful Servant left the Army and ſet forward with thirty thouſand horſe, publiſhing every where, that the Emperour followed him at the heels. But he ſtaid ſometime behind to ſecure his intereſt there, and fruſtrate as much as

he

he could the intentions and designes of *Guines*, upon that Country.

Axalla, who hated all hypocrits, caused *Tamerlan* to be perswaded, that this devout Knave aimed at the Monarchy of *Persia*. He wished him therefore to weaken as much as he could that mans faction. The Emperour was alwayes inclinable to believe that *Guines* was a very real and honest man, whatever was told him by others, therefore he could never be obliged to ruine or cross his affairs. This Indulgence and too great credulity, proved hurtful to the Princes Posterity, for while he was alive, *Guines* kept himself within the bounds of moderation, but after his decease, he published abroad his ambitious intent. This is an excellent Lesson for the greatest Monarchs, who commonly look no farther than the time present, and are content with the submissions and outward homages which their vertue and reputation draw from such as stand in awe of them. They neglect to look into the time to come, and endeavour to secure for their posterity, things that Death is going to take from them. In truth the ruine of this faction of *Guines*, setled peace in the Kingdomes of *Persia*, and caused *Tamerlans* successours to enjoy it a long while.

This subtil man had won the *Chancellour*, and some of the chief of the Emperours Council, by perswading them, that his manner of serving God was the most agreeable with the Law of the Prophet. *Tamerlan* had no intent to imitate it, but he would not contradict it. He sent for some of the most learned persons in the Law to reconcile the differences. At last when much time had been spent in vain, and he saw that the reconciliation was impossible, and that e-

very one held to that interpretation which he fancied best, he never attempted it any more. After this conference about Religion, he caused the *Persians* to take the Oath of Allegiance. He paid off his army, and rewarded every man according to his deservings. He gave the Government of *Persia* to the Prince of *Tanais* to command there, as his *Vice-Roy*, and left him besides, the Troops appointed for the guarding of the Province one hundred thousand foot, with orders to send them abroad to Winter in the Towns, as well to refresh his Souldiers as to oblige, by that means the whole Country to continue faithful to him. He led with him the rest of his Troops and Prisoners, for he had given a great many to *Guinet*, to instruct them in his Religion, but this Hypocrite trained them up in War, and after *Tamerlans* death, used them with success to further his affairs in *Persia*. The Prince had *Guinet* then with him, he laboured to perswade him, that his desire to have Rule, aimed at nothing, but the advancement of the Prophets Religion. *Tamerlan* pretended to believe him, yet nevertheless *Guinet*, a crafty man, perceived that the Emperour suspected and understood him. But to remove out of his mind this Jealousie of his person, he followed and attended upon him every where, with great care and dilligence. He saw that his absence could in no case injury his affairs, and that the *Tartarians* would furnish him with wayes and methods to succeed in his purposes.

The Emperour perswaded also many great Lords of *Persia* to undertake with him a Journy to *Samarcand*. He was glad of their Companies, that he might draw them from their homes and cure them of their fierceness and haughty spirits, which made them look upon them-

themſelves, as ſo many petty Princes and Kings. He was willing that they ſhould ſee his Court in all its glory, his Pomp and Magnificence, and by his mildneſs and kind dealing, oblige them to continue faithful to his intereſt: this wrought ſo much upon them, that whiles he lived all *Perſia* was obedient to him, and furniſh'd a great many good Souldiers to fight under his banners, and people out of its boſome to ſecure *Syria*, and the *Sultans* Country.

Tamerlan therefore having left the Prince of *Tanais* to govern *Perſia* in his abſence, he departed with his Troops towards *Sachetzy*. This march of the Army was much like a Triumph: The priſoners went before, and amongſt them was *Bajazet* the Turkiſh Emperour, who was chain'd for fear that he ſhould offer violence to himſelf. This was an inſtance of the Worlds unconſtancy, but his misfortune had neither made him milder, nor more tractable. In his loweſt miſery, he abated nothing of his pride and haughty mind. All the people of the Country, through which *Tamerlan* paſſed, ſung forth his praiſes, and loaded him with Prayers and Bleſſings for his Victories. At laſt he arrived at *Samarcand* with all the riches and ſpoils, and was received in a moſt glorious manner. Near two months were ſpent in feaſtings, playes, and all manner of publick rejoycings. The Emperour then called to mind a Vow that he had made, to build a moſt glorious Temple with an Hoſpital. Accordingly he now laid the foundations, and Dedicated it to the *Only Immutable and Incomprehenſible GOD*. And for the better carrying on of the work, he had ſent for all the able Artiſts, to employ them in building.

ing this Temple and Hospital, and in other glorious structures for the embellishing of this great City, for he had an intent to enlarge *Samarcand* and to render it as big again as it was before, for that purpose, he had marked out the streets, and caused ground to be given to such as desired to build, and if persons, were poor and not able, he deliver'd to them out of his Exchequer monies to carry on their work. He gave liberty to all prisoners, that would dwell in the City, and settle their abode, and granted large priviledges to all the Citizens. And though he spent much time in ordering the affairs of this new City, he neglected not to manage and preserve the affections of his Souldiers. He had caused all the names of the worthiest of them, who had behav'd themselves well, to be recorded, which Records he now called for, and, when they expected no such matter, he gave them gifts and things answerable to their behaviour and services, and promoted some to employments, sutable to their Capacities and Talents.

Whiles he staid at *Samarcand*, the Auxilliary Troops of the Moscovites were refreshing themselves. Afterwards he dismissed them with their full Wages, and desired them to return his thanks to their Prince. *Sinopes*, a Nephew of Prince *Axalla*, was ordered to conduct them through the Emperours Country, that they might not be disorderly, and to renew the Alliance with the Great *Duke*, that he might be secure of the borders of *Parthia*, whiles he should be further at a distance. At this time *Tamerlan* discovered in his privy Council the old Emperours death. He caused his obsequies

ſquies to be performed in the moſt glorious manner, anſwerable to his Unkles deſervings and grandeur. He ſpent eight dayes in theſe funeral Ceremonies, and afterwards left *Bajazet* in the keeping of the Governour of *Sachetay* at *Samareand*, to go and viſit the Empreſs his Wife. But as his greateſt deſire was to live in Peace and Union with his Neighbours and Allies, and to preſerve the Countries, that he had conquered, he thought fit for that purpoſe to ſend *Nobazes* one of his moſt underſtanding Miniſters to continue with the Prince of *Tanais*, and aſſiſt him with advice either in War or for the ſuppreſſion of the Cabals, which might riſe to diſquiet his Government and Kingdome, or about the borders, and to help him to carry on the Emperours intereſt and deſigns. During his abſence nothing had happened amiſs, but he charged *Nobazes* to have a ſpecial care, to cauſe order and diſcipline to be obſerved amongſt his Souldiers as the beſt means to make them capable of the ſervices he expected from them.

The Emperour departed for *Quinzay* with all the Court, and his ordinary guard of forty thouſand horſe and threeſcore thouſand foot. After ſeveral days march, he arrived through the acclamations and publick rejoycings of all the people at *Cambalu*, where he received the news of a battle won by *Odmar*, from one of the Generals of the King of *China*. He gave him an account by letters, that in purſuance of the Victory, he had taken three or four great Cities of that Kingdome. So that the King had been forced to ſue for peace the ſecond time, *Odmar* deſired therefore inſtructions upon what conditions he ſhould grant him peace.

The

The Emperour sent him these conditions, which he should require. That the King of *China* should pay him all the arrears of the Tribute of the former years, unto which he was engaged by the first peace. That he should be obliged to come to him and render him homage, as a vassal of the Empire. That whiles he should be in the way the Army should depart. That all the Towns taken in this last War should be restored, three onely excepted at the Emperours choice. That for all other things, they should be reduced to the same condition as they were before this last breaking out, and that upon this condition, he should pay the Emperours Army six moneths with all the charges of this War, which he had kindled of his own accord.

The Emperour at the same time considered how to reward *Odmar* for his services, he imagin'd no better way, than to promote him to the honour of his Alliance, by giving him his own Sister in Marriage. He sent her therefore with a stately equipage and Train. So great a token of his respects and love he conceived, would ingage him the more, to be true, faithful, and careful, for his Princes interest and person, and the good of his Empire. It is not to be imagin'd with what state and in what glory *Tamerlan* was welcomed into *Cambalu*; for the Inhabitants of this great City, to take away from him the remembrance of their former rebellion, endeavoured, beyond all others, to express their zeal and affection for him. The Prince was so well pleased with them, that he restored all their privileges, which had been taken from them during *Calix*'s revolt. Every where when he passed

paſſed by, there was nothing heard but Prayers and Bleſſings from all the people, and thankful expreſſions from himſelf, for he labour'd to win the hearts of his Subjects of this great Empire, which was fallen into his hands. Not only the Towns and Cities did ring with applauſes, and ſhouts of joy, but alſo the Country round about were glad to ſee him well and ſafely returned, when he paſſed by the *Herds*, theſe are certain Families, that have no ſetled abode, but wander up and down the fields, when they are weary in one place, they travel to another, and alwayes ſtop where they meet with moſt graſs for their Cattle.

The Empreſs came to *Cambalu* to meet the Emperour, having left behind *Axalla* at *Quinzay*, to command in her abſence. And becauſe this great City is neareſt to mount *Althay*, where the Scythian Emperours called Great *Chans*, are uſually interred from this City. The Emperour cauſed the Corps of his deceaſed Unkle to be carried with all the Pomp and State imaginable. He himſelf followed the Herſe; and though it is not uſual to ſee women in ſuch occaſions, he deſired (to expreſs more honor to her Father) that the Empreſs ſhould accompany the body with him; they walked together. This he did, to give a greater authority to the Empreſs in the Eyes of the World, that in caſe God ſhould take him away, before their Children were at Age, ſhe might be thought worthy to govern the Empire during their minority, as he himſelf judged her, by all the publick ſigns, that he could give in all occaſions. The Prince was ſo much taken with her behaviour and vertuous carriage, that he would not love any other women,

nor

nor suffer his affections to wander up and down upon meaner objects. Here he had fixed his mind, here he had confined his desires and appetite. He look'd with contempt upon all other, neither their beauty, nor the charms of Wit, nor the amorous inclinations of the female Sex, could prevail upon his inflexible soul, and oblige him to that variety of amours, in which men of his Religion and Elevation commonly indulge themselves. For as he was naturally very chast, he intended no other thing by his Marriage, but to have Children to perpetuate his Name and Family, and succeed him in the Empire.

As soon as the funeral Ceremonies were over, and the Emperours Corps laid in the Sepulcher of his Ancestors, he returned to *Cambalu*, spending the Winter in Races, in Tilts, and hunting all manner of Beasts. He had pitched upon that City, as nearest to *China*, from whence he desired to hear News often, intending to go thither the following Summer, if necessity required, for he was resolved to take care to preserve what he had Conquered there by his valour and good Fortune, and to enjoy the fruits of his Labours. He was likewise busie in perfecting the buildings, that he had begun at *Samarcand*, and in compleating them as soon as he could.

In the mean while, *Axalla* dwelt at *Quinzay*, well beloved of the Souldiers and Inhabitants. They had an affection for him, because of his Mildness, Liberality, Courage, Justice, and other admirable qualities. They all knew what credit he had with the Empe-

rour.

rour. Therefore they made their addreſs to him, to intreat him, to perſwade the Emperour that they might have the advantage to ſee him in their City, and to chooſe it, for to bring up the Prince his Son. At his requeſt the Emperour granted them their deſire, appointing *Axalla* to govern him with all the Country of *Quinzay*, as far as the Sea, beyond *Cambalu*, which contains above four hundred Leagues, and more than three hundred Cities, with an infinite number of Towns and Villages. This was properly the Empire of his deceaſed Unkle. He made *Axalla* Lieutenant General under the Prince his Son, and made him likewiſe the Governour of his perſon, ſo great a Confidence he had in his Virtue, Fidelity, and Abilities. In this manner he rewarded him, for his notable Services, and for the great Victories that he had got for him, by his Vertue, Experience, and Courage. He looked upon him therefore as moſt able to teach his Son, the Art of Keeping and Governing thoſe many Nations, which *Axalla* had helped to Conquer.

CHAP.

CHAP. VII.

Cairo *relieved with Provisions and Souldiers, when besieged by the* Sultan. *His overthrow and Death. The Emperours Journey to* Quinzay. *The Settlement of his affairs in* China.

WHiles the Emperour was ordering his affairs at *Cambalu*, news was brought him, that the *Sultan* had besieged *Cairo* three moneths with a powerful Army, and that the Inhabitants of that great City, were so far from favouring his designs, that they were very zealous and courageous in their defence for *Tamerlans* interest. For that purpose, he had placed there a great many strangers.

Without this precaution, doubtless in this juncture, there had been many Seditions and Plots for the betraying of the City, because *Calibes* had not then forces enough to oblige the *Sultan* to raise his Siege without other assistance. But in regard this business was of the greatest consequence for the Empires preservation, he sent to the Prince of *Tanais*, Vice-Roy of *Persia* to send him a party. This Prince was alwayes desirous to purchase glory, and ready to obey his Emperours orders, who had commanded him to assist his neighbour in time of need. He gathered up therefore his dispersed Troops, old Souldiers, *Parthians*, and *Tartars*, to the Number of about one hundred thousand, who had accompanied the Emperour in all his Battles and Victories. They were desirous of *Axalla's* presence, but next to him they

they thought none was better able to command them than the Prince of *Tanais*, the Emperours Cosen German, who had been trained up under *Axalla*; for in all the greatest difficulties and dangers, where *Axalla* had gained so much honour, this Prince had accompanied and learned from him the uneasie and hazardous Trade of War. In which he had in the Judgements of all men, profited so much, that *Axalla* and he were looked upon, as the two Eyes of the Empire and *Tamerlan* the Head, they were therefore seated at the two most dangerous extremities of this great body, one in *Syria*, the other in *Quinzay*.

With this considerable body of an Army, unto which were added some Troops of the great *Chamberlain*, which were at *Babylon*, the Prince of *Tanais* marched into *Syria* towards *Aleppo*, where he met with *Calibes*, and found that he had got together two hundred thousand good Souldiers. The *Sultan* was not ignorant, that this Army was drawing to him, which had formerly overthrown him, but he conceived some hopes, because *Tamerlan* was not there in person, nor his good fortune, which alwaies accompanied him; and because he was to fight with a young Prince full of life and courage, whose too greedy desire of honour might oblige him to undertake things too hastily or unadvisedly. He resolved therefore to be wary, and by his late misfortune, to learn not to hazard a battle in plain ground, but to wait for his enemies behind his Trenches. For that intent he drew his Trenches along the River of *Nilus*; for onely by that way the City expected to be relieved; for it was not probable that so many mouths could be

ſupplied with neceſſaries, by Carts, or Camels, or by any other carriage by Land. Therefore he digg'd his Trenches with eaſe, becauſe the Prince with his Army marched but ſoftly. His moſt judicious Commanders adviſed him not to approach too near the Town, till the proviſions were ready to be carried in. For that purpoſe the Prince of *Tanais* and *Calibes* had ſent Purveyours round about *Syria*, and upon the Sea Coaſt, and about the Iſlands of *Greece*, to make proviſions of Corn, which was to be carried to *Alexandria*, and from thence to *Cairo*. All their orders had been punctually executed.

In the mean while, the army was coming on, which as ſoon as the enemy perceived upon the banks of *Nilus*, where the *Sultan* lay with his Souldiers on both ſides, with a bridge of Boats ſtretched over the River, he withdrew himſelf into his fortifications. When the Prince was in ſight of *Cairo*, he found that the enemy could not incompaſs about all the Walls, that were too large, but left a paſſage free to go in or out of the City. He went therefore in, carrying with him ſeveral Carts and Beaſts loaden with proviſions, which he diſtributed by his Commiſſaries into all places that wanted.

By this he underſtood, that they had all things ſufficient for fifteen dayes. A Council of War was then called, where it was reſolved that they ſhould endeavour to famiſh the *Sultan*, by cutting off his proviſions, which he drew from three or four Towns, which had yielded to him again, and ſollicited him to beſiege *Cairo*, aſſuring him, that it was to be taken with the Engine

gine of *Hunger*. For this purpoſe, whiles things and neceſſaries were providing at *Alexandria*, to be ſent to *Cairo*, whiles a Fleet of Ships of War were making ready to fight with the *Sultans* Fleet, he poſted himſelf above *Cairo*, and ſent a Summons to the Inhabitants of *Maviare*, commanding them to yield to the Emperour of *Aſia* his Maſter, threatning Fire and Sword, if they offered to reſiſt: Their refuſal, cauſed the Army to beſiege them, and with all ſpeed to make their approaches, there was a Tower very ſtrong, that hindered the *Tartars* proceedings, for from thence the beſieged caſt upon them artificial fires and killed a great many men. The chief Engenier went to view this Tower, and offered the Prince of *Tanais* to undermine it in four dayes, which accordingly was performed. When the Tower was down they ſearched the Wall which was found but weak and unable to reſiſt the violence of the Engines, which ſoon caſt a great part to the ground. This encouraged the *Tartars* to aſſault the Town. They won and plundered it, and put all to the Sword, except Women and Children. The other Towns, terrified with this ſpeedy expedition, ſeing no likelihood of ſuccours to be expected from the *Sultan*, were yeilded up at the firſt Summons and admitted to compoſition. The Prince of *Tanais* placed in theſe Towns, between two and three thouſand horſe and four thouſand foot. He judged next, that he was to loſe no time, but with all ſpeed relieve *Cairo*, for fear it ſhould be reduced to neceſſity with his Army. He ſaw that the *Sultan*, as a judicious Commander, had ſo ordered his affairs, as either to cauſe him to periſh

for want, or to render his attempts vain. The Governour of the Towns lately taken, might have held out longer, as they were able and had promised the *Sultan*, who had furnished them with all that they had required. A delay of fifteen days had forced *Tanais* to forsake *Cairo* and the best part of *Ægypt*. The *Sultan* was not totally discouraged, though he had reason to be troubled at this infidelity, and want of resolution. He sent for his Commissaries of Provisions to know what he had in store, from them he understood that he had enough for thirty days. He drove away from his army all useless and idle persons, setting them on the other side of the River, there to shift for themselves and ly at his enemies mercy, such as were not to be useful to him in the fight. He had news of the coming of the naval Army from *Alexandria*, which caused him to provide betimes to oppose it.

In the mean time, the Prince of *Tanais* incamped with his Army beneath *Ethied* and *Sebis*, near a River, which was a stream or a branch of *Nilus*, and was fordable in divers places. But the *Sultan* was with his Army at *Buldao*, where he had strongly intrenched himself near the River on both sides of it. His Army contained threescore thousand foot, and forty thousand horse, the only remains of his former unhappy Troops. He had caused them to expect the retaking of *Cairo*, which would probably have open'd him a way for the recovering of his Kingdome. But when all passages in the upper *Ægypt* were stopp'd and nothing came to them from thence, they began then to despair of success. The *Sultan* labour'd

to

to prevent all discontents, which might from hence arise, by assuring his Souldiers, that in fifteen days for the most, the *Tartarian* Army would be constrain'd to depart for want of Provisions, and that then the City would be forced to yield for hunger. This perswasion caused them to abide still in their Trenches without attempting any thing, for their chiefest care was to provide for their own security near the River. They had a great number of armed boats all over the River to stop the coming of any relief to the City. When the Prince of *Tanais* saw that the enemy was so strongly fortified in his Trenches, that it was not possibly to force him without running the hazard of a misfortune, he employed his men in making another Trench, and other fortifications for his own Camp, like that of the Enemies. For it is against all policy and prudence, to stand with a naked Army near and against an enemies Army well intrench'd. The *Tartarians* were three times stronger than the *Sultan*, both in horse and foot, but they were obliged for their safety to continue, thus incamped near them, because they waited and expected the coming of *Calibes*, who was with the Fleet, with an intention to carry in Provisions into *Cairo*. And the Prince of *Tanais* was to assist him by Land, whiles he should endeavour to make his way by water to the City.

Every day some parties went out to skirmish with the Enemies, to oblige them to keep closer together in their Camp, and to understand the best place for to assault it, when the time should serve. At last the Prince of *Tanais* had news of the coming of *Calibes*, who desired him to send

him twelve thouſand of his Army, and imbark them privately, at a rendevouz unknown to the enemy, for *Calibes* truſted not too much upon the Troops, which he had picked up at *Alexandria*, and becauſe he intended to fight in perſon upon the River, to open away for his Ships, or to periſh in the attempt, he was reſolved to have ſuch perſons to aſſiſt him, whom he knew to be brave and reſolute men. The Prince of *Tanais* could have wiſhed that *Calibes* had yeilded to him the honour of commanding the Fleet, but all his Captains repreſented to him, that it belonged to him to chuſe, becauſe he was in his own Government, and that the chiefeſt and fierceſt action was likely to be at Land. That doubtleſs, the *Sultan* would ſend men aboard his Ships to help them, that in this caſe the Trenches would be leſs guarded, and more eaſie to be taken; for the two Armies were but two thouſand paces from one another. And that in all likelihood the day would not paſs without an encounter at Land.

The Prince of *Tanais* deſired it with paſſion, as a young *Hero* paſſionate to win honour: But to qualifie this natural heat within him, the Emperour had placed near his perſon two great Lords, to keep in his courage and not ſuffer it to run headlong, but to adviſe him and lead on the Souldiers, who were accuſtomed to *Tamerlans* good fortune, and ready to attempt the greateſt difficulties, and overcome the moſt apparent dangers. *Tanais* ſent therefore thirteen or fourteen thouſand of his ſtouteſt Souldiers to *Calibes*, under the command of *Sinopes*, *Axalla*'s nephew, Major General of the Infantry, or rather *Axalla*'s Lieutenant

tenant, who had that office all over the Empire, and when the Emperour himſelf commanded in chief. *Sinopes* was a man of a great reputation, having much improved himſelf in *Axalla*'s tuition. When the Prince of *Tanais* judged that the Fleet was at hand, near the Enemies Bridge fortified and ſtrengthened with Chains and Ropes, he cauſed all his horſe to be ready, and drew up his Infantry, ſending forty thouſand men to a place, that he had taken notice of, leſs guarded than the reſt. For the Enemies ſeeing him incamp'd between them and the City, they imagin'd that the greateſt aſſault would be there, therefore they provided that ſide accordingly. They had neglected to fortifie a little Hill, which was of a great advantage to the party that ſhould have the command of it. Therefore the Prince of *Tanais* ſent this day to aſſault and take it. He had employed his men upon the water only to deceive the *Sultan*, for after the taking of the Hill, he marched forward to the ſecond Trenches, as if it had been his deſign to aſſault and force them alſo, but it was onely to cauſe the *Sultan* to look that way, for he thought the whole Army had been there, he prepared therefore for to defend himſelf on that ſide.

Whiles the *Tartarian* Army by Land, was thus at handy-blows with the enemy, their Naval forces broke in upon the Boats, after a ſmall reſiſtance overthrew them, before they could receive any help. For in the beginning of the diſpute the *Tartars* perceived that there was an Iſland in the River, where the *Sultan* had raiſed a battery to ſhoot againſt them, they aſſaulted and carried

it, forcing their enemies to retreat into their Trenches, by this means they loſt the advantage of this place, which was fit to defend their bridge againſt the *Tartarian* Navy. Next to the Iſland they aſſaulted the bridge, but at the firſt onſet, *Calibes* was ſunk and drowned, and his party in diſorder and diſcouraged, but *Sinopes*, who commanded under him, growing more deſperate by this loſs, renewed the fight with a greater reſolution, and utterly broke the bridge, ſetting the Fire to it with a Boat full of Wild-Fire. This courage of *Sinopes* forced Victory to declare for him, and opened a paſſage for the Navy to the City in view of the Enemies, who could no longer hinder or ſtop it, for the Fleet lying under the Iſland, and ſome Engines that were placed upon the Land ſhot into the Camp, ſo that they could not lift up nor ſhew their heads.

This loſs of *Calibes* was much lamented, for he was a man that had rendered great ſervices to the Emperour, who loved him well and truſted him. His body was ſought for amongſt many others that periſhed in the Waters, but none could diſtinguiſh it.

It was thought that twenty thouſand men died on both ſides that day, for few eſcaped of *Calibes* left Wing. *Sinopes* gain'd much honor and reputation, by his good conduct and undaunted courage. This action gave a beginning to his preferment: It deſerved to be well rewarded, for there was no poſſibility of relieving the City, but by that way, for being in great want and ſo large, many convoys had been required to furniſh it, with Proviſions till the ſucceeding harveſt, unto which there was then three months.

Af-

Afterwards *Sinopes* incamped in the Island with some of the Army, to hinder the enemies passage over the River. Nevertheless, for all his watchfulness, the next night being very dark, they passed over to the other bank undiscovered, in order to their retreat, which every one imagin'd would not be by Land, for they had no Towns on that side, nor intelligence in *Cairo* nor *Alexandria*, every thing was changed against them. So that had they resolved to go that way, they must first have overthrown the *Tartarian* Army, which was too difficult a Task for them. They were therefore obliged to pass over the River, and retreat that way, for only on that side they had yet a Town that held for them. In the mean while, the Prince of *Tanais* had alwaies a watchful eye upon the *Sultan* and his designs. But he was as much troubled what to do. In case the enemies after their passage over the River, had obstinately hovered about *Cairo*. He had been then constrained to remain there also, and so numerous an Army had famish'd that great City, which had Provisions but for eight days. It was resolved in Council, that the Army should decamp, as soon as possible, seeing that the City had been relieved. They thought that the enemies Army being less in number, and better provided with Provisions, would stay upon the place a longer time. It was therefore concluded that the Army should be divided into two bodies, and should attend on the further bank, and the hither side, and that *Sinopes* should stay in the Island, to favour all the Convoys and Ships of Provision, intended to sail to *Cairo*, and hinder the enemies attempts upon them. This

resolution

resolution was taken and kept very secret. But when the enemies had spent all their Provisions, they sought to retreat as well as the *Tartars*, which they endeavoured to perform in the night. All the Boats and Ships, which they had near the banks they made ready to go aboard, but the Eve before they seem'd to resolve to march into *Syria*, for that purpose, they sent out of their Trenches some parties to assault the most advanced Guards, as if they had intended to open a passage that way, by force of Arms.

Whiles this is doing, a great part of their Army were ready at the Rivers side to go over. In the beginning of the night Fires were discovered more than ordinary upon the bank, and most part of their Army was carried over. *Sinopes* could never hinder them, for the nights obscurity helped them in their retreat. The *Sultan* passed over first, leaving behind him his Lieutenant General to keep the Camp with all his Infantry.

As soon as the day appeared, it was known that a part of their Army was on the other side. The Prince of *Tanais* was willing to attack those that were left behind in the Camp, but the oldest and most experienced Captains were not of his opinion. They said that it was no easie matter to face threescore thousand men in strong Trenches. And that it would be more wisdome to send a supply of men and Engines to *Sinopes*, to strengthen him, that he might stop the passage of such as would afterwards venture to go over. Nevertheless, it was resolved, that when the remainder should endeavour to follow after their Com-

Companions and their Prince, that then the *Tartarian* Army should break into their Camp, and charge them in their retreat.

The *Sultan*, seeing that his passage had been successful, sent word to the remainder of his army to adventure over the night following, and that as many as could should get aboard. And to incourage his men the more and hasten them, he passed over again himself to them, for he knew nothing of the supply of men, which *Sinopes* had received from the Land Army. As soon as *Sinopes* saw the enemies he charged them desperately without delay. The *Sultan* himself was wounded in performing the duty of a great Captain, he passed over the water with a great number of his men to joyn with the other party. In this dispute, the *Sultan* lost a great many men and some Boats were sunk; only twenty thousand were remaining behind in their Camp, without any hopes of retreat to their Prince. The *Tartars* assaulted and won their next Trenches, but the innermost were so well fortified and guarded that the Commanders thought it no wisdome to venture upon them, but rather to stay where they were than to hazard all upon an uncertainty. They incamp'd therefore within the Trenches, in expectation of that which they were to have by reason and the rules of War, sooner than by force. Which happen'd accordingly, for as soon as the enemies saw themselves pen'd up, and not able to look about, by reason of the *Tartars* approaches, they sent to desire to parley with them, which was granted. They sent to the Prince of *Tanais* a *Parthian* Officer, who had a long time served under

under him, but being left behind sick and taken by the *Sultan*, he enter'd himself in his service. After some demonstrations of his strength, this Prince had made him Major General of his Infantry. He desired to speak with the Prince of *Tanais*. He told him that he had been sent with his Comrades from the Troops, which he besieged, to intreat him to shew them mercy, and not to spill any more humane blood, but without it to accept of the Victory, which they offered into his hands upon the conditions that he should propose. As the Prince of *Tanais* was visiting the Trenches he heard the offer of this Collonel with Joy.

He gave them liberty upon this condition, that, for the time to come, they should be Subjects and Slaves to the Emperour, and serve him in his Wars wheresoever they should be commanded. All which they promised to perform. Some were commissioned by the Prince of *Tanais* to receive their Oath. Only the Lieutenant General of the *Sultan*, and some other Captains departed in a Ship the night before, to follow after their Master.

This Prince, as we have taken notice, was wounded at the passage of the River, which caused him to retreat with his Cavalry twenty leagues, to a place that belong'd to him yet. As soon as he was arrived, he died of his wounds, to the great sorrow of his followers. The Prince of *Tanais*, who, as soon as he could, pursued him, entered into this place, named *Palema*, a few dayes after his death, and finding that he was not buried, shed Tears for his unhappy end, commanding that he should be interred according to his Quality, and

received

received very courteously all his Servants. He had left behind him a Son, who had carried with him all that would not yield to the Emperour. They fled to the borders of *Lybia*, into certain Towns of a difficult access, because of the Wilderness that lies in the way to them. There these poor men lived in hopes to be revenged of the *Tartars*, and one day to restore their broken and ruined fortunes.

In this manner ended this last War with the *Mamelucks*. The Emperour was so troubled at it, that he once resolved to march thither himhimself, but the news of the Victory, and of the *Sultans* death hindered him. The Prince of *Tanais* was mightily applauded for his prudent conduct, but *Caliber*'s unhappy death dasht all the Emperours joy. He was so worthy a man, that he could not be sufficiently lamented, chiefly by *Tamerlan*, who lost in him a faithful servant and and a Great Captain.

The Prince of *Tanais* had his Offices and Government bestowed upon him, with order to make his ordinary abode in *Syria* and *Ægypt*, to watch and look over them, and keep those Provinces in peace. *Sinopes* was made Major General of the Imperial army, which was commanded to return into *Persia*, under the leading of the great *Chamberlain*, who came to the Army at the close of the War, with a considerable body of men. For it was *Tamerlans* custome to cause one Army to march after another, towards the places that wanted assistance. This happy success of his Lieutenants shewed how much it concerns a Prince to dwell in the midst of his Dominions, that he might with more ease, and more speedily send forth his

his ſuccours to defend any part or Corner.

The King of *China* was then at the Emperours Court, to wait upon him, according to the Articles of agreement concluded with him, which he confirmed in the Princes preſence, and ſwore obedience, and did him homage. The Emperour endeavoured to render himſelf dreadful to this Heathen King, who never kept his promiſes, but when he pleaſed by ſhewing him his ſtrong Towns well furniſhed with people. He was aſtoniſhed to ſee ſo many men cloathed ſo ſimply, chiefly the Emperour, that wore nothing but a garment of coloured Cloath, without any Ornament. He took notice alſo, that all his attendants and Officers about him look'd as ſo many Kings by their Majeſtick contenances and behaviour. Whiles he was at the Court, news came of the Victory obtained upon the *Sultan*, he was eye witneſs of the publick rejoycings, which laſted eight dayes, ſpent in ſports, feaſting, and other divertiſements, after that he returned to his own Country. The Emperour gave order next to diſtribute double pay to his Army, which was returning out of *Ægypt* into *Perſia*, with the Great *Chamberlain* and *Sinopes* Major General. Afterwards he went to *Quinzay*, to ſee his Son, and ſatisfie the impatient wiſhes of this great City, that deſired paſſionately to enjoy him. His preſence was alſo needful to regulate all affairs, as he had done in other places. *Axalla* had no mind to be too buſie, becauſe he had to do with a numerous people, inclinable to commotions. He was therefore afraid ſo far to concern himſelf as to give *Tamerlan* a diſguſt, or cauſe the people to murmur. Therefore he often ſpoke it, that

that the ordering of the publick affairs was a great buſineſs, which none was capable of, but the Emperour. For the intent of *Tamerlan* was to appoint the ſame Laws every where in his great Empire, to command the uſe of the ſame Weights and Meaſures, that the ſame Tributes ſhould be ſetled in all parts, according to each mans ability, reſolving as ſoon as his Incomes were regulated, that he would make proviſion of Victuals, which ſhould be carried from place to place, according as his Army ſhould need. He was wont to compare an Army with the humane body, ſaying that the Captains were to be look'd upon as the head, the Souldiers as the feet and hands. Mony was the ſtrength and the ſpirits, which keeps this body in motion, and food as the belly from whence it was entertain'd.

Therefore he ſaid, that when an Army can repreſent a perfect man, in all reſpects, it is invincible, becauſe it fights when it pleaſeth, and may chuſe whether it will hazard any thing, but upon good terms. When an Army miſcarries, this proceeds from ſome imperfection in the body, which may be lame or wounded, or from the ſtarved belly or the diſeaſed head. Therefore when he ſent the Prince of *Tanais* againſt the *Sultan*, he was afraid of the head, and of the belly of his Army. For the Prince was but young, and his men unfurniſhed with neceſſary proviſions. for he was wont a year before hand, when he intended to make War, to gather up ſtores of food and fill up his Magazins, now this year they had neglected this piece of policy, his victory therefore he aſcribed to his good fortune, which was loath

to

to forsake him, rather than to the Wisdome of his young General.

When the Emperour was near *Quinzay*, *Axalla* went out to meet him at two dayes journey from the City, with the greatest Lords of the Country and the chief Citizens, whiles the rest were making ready to welcome him in the most magnificent manner, that they were able. This City is one of the richest in the world, and one of the largest, very well scituated upon small Islands or Channels, cut from one end to the other, with stately buildings, and a great many bridges for the convenience of the Inhabitants. It is a place of so great Trade, that there comes to it continually all sorts of Goods, Stuffs, Precious Stones, and chiefly spices. *Tamerlan* at his first arrival was presented with the richest things of the City: They were valued above two Millions of Gold, to not reckon many other rare things, which were given him, as tokens of their subjection to him, and affection for him.

He seem'd to be very desirous to see his Son, who was then but about seven years old. He was brought up with much state, and with the care answerable to his Quality. When he was first brought to him, he took notice that his head was carefully covered, but he commanded that they should keep it uncovered, because as he said, He that is called by his birth to govern Nations ought to use himself to heat and cold, and to painful exercise, and not to indulge himself in an effeminate life. Some told him that the Child was but tender, what reply'd the Emperour will you make him a Woman? If he be not able to endure

dure the troubles and inconveniencies of War, he is not worthy to succeed me, for there must be no dainty and soft Prince to keep up the Empire of the *Parthians*. He had sent the Empress to *Samarcand*, to be there brought to bed, she was received with all the honours due to her Dignity, and the affection that the people could express. This was the first time of her visiting of this City.

A little after, the Emperour had news brought him, that she was safely delivered of her second Son, which he publish'd abroad and seem'd to rejoyce at it, appointing Tilts and magnificent Sports to express his gladness for several dayes. In this time, nothing but feastings and publick divertisements were seen in all parts. The Emperour himself took a great delight in such pastimes, because it gave him an opportunity to shew the agility of his body, and his dexterity to his Court and people, for he was judged the more worthy to command them, the more he excelled in such like exercises.

After a months abode in *Quinzay*, and after he had visited the maritime Towns near adjoyning, he went to *Samarcande* travelling softly, for in the Road he employed himself in hunting all sorts of beasts, and yet in the mean while took a great care to provide for the safety of the Empire, for it was his usual saying, that Pleasures and Sports were to him, as Wings to lift him up and ease him from the Labours, which God had put upon him for the preservation of his Subjects in peace.

The Inhabitants of *Quinzay* had so sincere a

Love for him, that when he called them together to oblige them to receive and submit to his new Laws, they made no difficulty to yeild to him, but embrac'd them with as much respect and devotion, as if they had been commanded by God himself, for their reverence and affection for his person made them submit. Whiles he continued in the City, the most part of the people were employed in looking upon him, as the chief object of their affections. Some of his Courtiers took notice of it, particularly *Axalla*. Therefore they told him, that this City was worthy of his constant abode. Not at all, reply'd the Emperour, if they did alwayes see me, they would quickly despise me, for it is a Maxime of State, that the Soveraign of this great City, must not come to it oftner than once in ten years, and then he must act as if he were upon a Theatre in view of all the World, he must act a serious and grave person, because the Inhabitants are naturally apt to be disgusted with their Prince. He ought therefore, if he will be esteem'd, to seek to give them the best impression that he can.

Before his leaving of *Quinzay*, he sent withall speed Prince *Axalla* towards *China*, with a Commission to examine, and end some differences between *Odmar* and the King of that Countrey, that he might be able by his Wisdome to compose them, and give him a just account at his return: As he had a great affection for his faithful servants, he long'd to see *Odmar* with him who had been absent many years. He desired him to take the time of *Axalla*'s abode in those parts. The Emperour was resolved not to leave *Cambalu*,

la, till after *Axalla*'s return from *China*. This was a very pleasing, and an honourable Commission to be sent into those parts, where his courage was so well known and fresh in the remembrance of all the Inhabitants, by his late noble exploits, but he was overjoyed to go thither that he might do service to *Odmar*, his intimate friend: *Tamerlan* had an excellent maxime, but contrary to that of most Princes, he laboured to keep all his Servants at Unity, and recommended to them love to one another, and faithfulness in his service. The chief cause, that obliged the Emperour to send *Axalla* into *China*, was to put a period to a dispute between that King and *Odmar* about the restitution of a place, which had been promised to the King. There seem'd to be some personal differences between them. So that *Axalla* was judged as the most pleasing person to this King to terminate this affair, because of his mildness and courteous behaviour.

When *Axalla* was upon the borders, he met with Prince *Odmar* waiting for him, who received him with great Pomp and State, and feasted him three dayes.

After this he gave him an account of the publick affairs, and departed to the Court to see *Tamerlan*. But *Axalla* went to *Pekin*, where he was welcomed by the Governour in that manner, that becomed the second person of the Empire. *Axalla* gathered his Souldiers together and with the Army, he marched to *Parchio* upon the borders of both Empires, as had been agreed upon before with the King of *China*, but in his way passed by *Quanton*, that strong and populous Town,

which he had taken in three moneths contrary to the expectation of the whole Army, and of the Emperour himself, who judged that it would have held out at least six moneths. The Report of his coming caused a great multitude of people to meet and welcome him, for every one could have desired him instead of *Odmar*, because his way of dealing was so amicable, and his vertues so much esteem'd of all the World. The Emperour, one of the wisest Princes of his time, saw plainly that *Odmar* was not so fit to govern those Provinces, that he was too grave and reserved, and not flexible, but that *Axalla* was of a contrary disposition, that he had the gift to please all sorts of humours, and therefore that he would be more grateful to these people. But *Axalla* could not be spared from other places, where his presence were more needful, for he looked upon him as the only person of his Empire, upon whom he could trust the whole concern of his Kingdomes in case any accident or a disease should disenable, and take him from the publick management of affairs. From *Quanton* *Axalla* march'd directly to the appointed rendevouz. whither the King of *China* was going. When he had advanced about fifty leagues into the Country lately conquer'd by *Odmar*, he thought he should wrong the Majesty of his Emperour, whose person he did then represent, by proceeding any farther to meet this Heathenish Prince, and that it did more become him, to oblige him to come to him there, than to advance into the Country, which had been restored to this King by the last Treaty, and for which he paid *Tamerlan* a considerable Tribute.

When

When the King was arrived with all his Court to a little Town, at a league distant from *Porchio*, he went out into a large Field where *Axalla* met him, with more attendants than he had. He gave place to *Axalla*, and respected him as much as if he had been the Emperour. Three times they met to confer together, for the King of *China* insisted alwayes upon the rendition of a Town, which the Emperour had granted him, but *Odmar* refused to yield it, because it was a strong place of importance. At last he seem'd to be content with another, farther in his Country, than the former, which stood in the midst of the *Tartarian* dominions. *Axalla* the judge of this controversie put him in possession of the latter, because he perceived that the King had no sinister design, and that all his aim was, but to have a place, where he might divert himself and take his pleasure. But *Odmar*, an old Jealous pate, having been often deceived by this unconstant Prince, had a contrary opinion of him, for he thought that he desired that place, but to plot and contrive new designes to disturb the State. He had sufficiently punished him for the last commotion, when the Emperour was in *Persia*, for by one battle he won from him five and twenty or thirty Towns, and above fourscore leagues of good land. So that *Quinanciu* was yeilded up to him, according to his desire. This Town he seem'd to like better than the other, for it is scituate upon a River, at the entry of a beautiful Lake, which surrounds it, and is full of many little Islands, where many stately houses were built for the pleasure of the former Kings of *China*, who after preferr'd this abode to their

glorious Palaces in their great Cities.

The last meeting was under a rich Canopy, which *Taxalla* caus'd to be erected: The King of *China* came to him with the chief Officers of his Court. After some disputes, this agreement was concluded; that the King should have liberty to dwell in *Quinancy*, as often and as long as he pleased, but should not put in it any Garrison or fortifie it, that he should live in it as a private person, or a Subject to the Emperour. That he might have three hundred men to guard him, but that he should have no other mark of Soveraignty, but with the consent of the Governour for the Emperour. That he should be oblig'd every time, that he intended to go to *Quinancy* to give notice of it to the Governour, and that before he set foot upon any of his Imperial Majesties Lands. That he should nevertheless, enjoy all the Lordship of the City, without any molestation from the Emperours Officers. This Heathen King accepted these offers in such a manner as discovered plainly, that all his engagements, promises, and oaths, would not hinder him from a rebellion, nor from an endeavour to sieze upon that pleasant abode, if an opportunity were offered to him, that he might shut himself up in that City, the rest of his dayes, for he had an intent to give over the Kingdome to one of his Brothers, because he was weary to suffer the *Tartarian* bondage. In this particular, he shewed the signs of a noble courage, which deserves a better name than that of a barbarian or a heathen, usually given to all his people, who are nevertheless, lovers of Learning and Civility. As soon as

Prince

Prince *Axalla* had dispatched these weighty affairs, he sent news to the Emperour, to understand how well he would like his actions, and know when he should return. In expectation of an answer he visited all the places newly Conquered in *China*.

Tamerlans custome was to remove often the Governours of Cities and Provinces, and to promote such as had well behaved themselves to better employments, or more honourable and more profitable Governments: *Odmar*, being very old and sickly, and therefore not fit to be upon the borders of an Empire, where the Governour ought to be alwayes in action, he resolved to keep with him, to assist him with his good counsels, and the rather, because *Odmar* was not well beloved by the People or the Souldiers. He purpos'd therefore to send in his stead the Great *Chamberlain*, a young and brave noble man, of a strong and healthy body, more likely to please his Souldiers, and new Subjects than the other, and better able to undergo all the labours and troubles, which such an employment at such a distance would require from him, for these reasons, he would not suffer *Odmar* to return thither, but for *Axalla*, he had orders to come back speedily. He was once thinking to send thither the Prince of *Vauchefu* in *Odmars* place, that he might by that means reward him, for all the notable services that he had received from him in so many occasions in his Armies, but when he considered, that the *Parthians* are not obedient to strangers, and that such a proceeding would give him an absolute command in his own Country, and expose his faithfulness

to a strong Temptation, he kept him near his person, for some other employment.

He had not forgotten also the brother of this Lord, who had been useful to him in his Armies, *Tamerlan* had no need of recommendations or solicitations, to oblige him to recompence his faithful Servants. He alwaies kept in mind every one that had well behaved himself in some brave action. Many times, when they never thought upon any such matter, he would send for them, to place them amongst his Counsellours, or give them a Government or an Office. No body was so bold as to ask these things from him, for he knew for certain, that those that bribe these honours and advantages, will never behave themselves in them for the Princes good or the benefit of the Subjects, but onely to gratifie their own Ambition and Covetousness, for this cause he was wont to change his Governours often, that their Governments might not become hereditary to their Posterity. Those, whom he thus removed, were not thereby displeas'd, nor did they think, that it was a token of the Emperours anger, for it was a rare thing, if when he had thus removed a Governour, he did not bestow upon him another, or some employment in his family. But when he pitch'd upon a man to attend upon him, or command in his Armies, every one look'd upon this choice, to be the highest honour and promotion, for all over the Empire, that man was obeyed as the Emperour himself. I have, saith *Albacent*, seen in the beginning of his Reign two Men, chosen in this manner, afterwards four, at last he increased them to seven,

who

who were as the seven Pillars of this large Empire. For the Prince trusted all his greatest and most weighty affairs in their hands. They were obliged to give an account of their actions only to him and at such times only, when they were called together to advise about the great affairs of Peace and War. These were the things that could be asked from him, which he would grant without scruple, Gold, Silver, Moveables, Houses, Lands, and other such things, which were not of such concernment, as to belong to the publick management of his Empire.

To end this digression, and return to *Cambalu*, where the Emperour was with *Odmar* and *Axalla*, we must know, that the former being grown heavy, by the number of his years, and unfit for action, whisper'd to him nothing but Peace, and wish'd him to settle the affairs of his Empire. But the latter was desirous of War and Battles, an enemy of rest. He discours'd to him of nothing but of new expeditions and conquests. This furious passion made him wish heartily, that the Prince would honour him, with an employment sutable to his temper and inclinations, and to bestow upon *Odmar* a Government in a peaceable Countrey far from the borders. In regard *Odmar* was related to the Emperour, *Axalla* judged him the fittest person, because of his Age, Wisdome, and Experience in all affairs, to be Governour of the young Prince brought up at *Quinzay*, for he would be able to keep the people with ease in obedience. But this change could not come but from the Emperours own inclination. No person was so bold, as to presume to motion it to

him

him. But providence favour'd *Axalla*'s wishes by giving him this opportunity to discover his mind.

The Idleness and Wantonness, which the General Peace all over the Empire had begot, caused some troubles and mutinies in the Army, which was as the soul of the Empire, and the terrour of the whole World, for the Cheiftains had been careless and negligent to keep the Souldiers in order. The irregularity was so great, that the ancient discipline was slighted, and the Souldiers grown insolent in regard of their late services and victories, refused to perform their duties, or mutinied whensoever they had a desire. They called in a threatning manner, for the Emperour himself to command them in person.

When he heard first of these disorders, he was not a little troubled. Must he to gratifie a handful of Mutiniers, forsake that rest and quiet, which he desires to enjoy for the few years that he hath to live in the World? Must he now expose himself and undergo new labours and pains, which he hath endured so long, and by which he hath with the hazard of his Life setled the whole World in Peace? In this unquietness of his mind, he sent for *Odmar* and *Axalla* to advise with them. *Axalla* without delay endeavoured to perswade the Emperour to go to his Army, and leave the management of affairs at home to *Odmars* Wisdome and Conduct. Now *Tamerlan* had begun to relish in the Cities a sweetness and pleasure differing from that life, which men lead in the midst of Souldiers, and the disturbances and dangers of War, though the latter had been formerly more pleasing

to

to him. This made him loath to ingage himſelf afreſh in ſuch perils and ſuch an unquiet life. He was more deſirous to enjoy in peace the fruits of his Valour and Courage. And the rather, becauſe he was then about fifty years of Age: an Age that called upon him to ſee to preſerve and ſecure what he had purchaſed by his Victories. At laſt he turned himſelf towards *Axalla* with theſe words, *I ſhould be eſteem'd ungrateful to* Odmar *for all his good and faithful Services, if in his Old age, I did not contrive a way to ſettle him in peace the reſt of his dayes. The advice, that you have given me in relation to him, I accept, and ſhall follow it. I conſent therefore, that* Odmar *take the Government of my Son, and of all the Country of* Quinzay *and* Cambalu, *and that he end there his dayes peaceably in my ſervice. But I intend to reſide in* Sachetay, *that I might be nearer* Perſia, *where I will have my Army incamp, unto which I ſhall add thirty thouſand horſe more, that it may be able to keep the Country from Rebelling. But for you, I will have you go and command it in perſon, I look upon you as the only man of my Empire beſt able to perform the duties of this Office with credit, not only becauſe the Souldiers have an affection for you, but becauſe I have alwayes ſeen you careful to obſerve the diſcipline of War. I truſt my whole Empire in your hands by truſting you with mine Army, which only is able to keep quiet ſo many large Provinces, and ſo many Nations differing in manners, language, and cuſtomes, which you have helped to ſubdue. I will take care, that nothing ſhall be wanting to this Army, and that the cleareſt and moſt certain part of my Revenues ſhall be appointed to pay them, and to reward thoſe whom you ſhall judge worthy*

thy: I would have you take a great care to oblige the Troops, to observe the Parthian *discipline without alteration. Let them lodge always in the Camp in the open Field. You shall change this Camp every three moneths. Let them buy all necessaries themselves and pay for them, without wronging any body, and let those that shall break these orders be punish'd severely, I would have also my Army be incamp'd in* Persia, *because the people are there more inclinable to rebellion than elsewhere, and not so willing to obey, and because* Syria *is near adjoyning. The Army therefore, will be sooner ready to carry a remedy to the troubles that may arise in those parts.*

After this discourse to *Axalla*, the Emperour told *Odmar*, that by putting as he did, his Son into his hands, he did put his deareſt treasure, and the chief of all his Riches, and gave him the command of the two thirds of his Empire. That he could not shew him a greater assurance of being well satisfied with his former services, than by delivering unto him this precious Pawn. That he should command in Chief in his richeſt Provinces, where the people should honour and respect him as himself. That all things were quiet and in peace, and fit for his weakneſs and years. He sent also for his Chancellour, who was not present, when these things were concluded. He commanded him to cause two Commissions to be drawn, one for *Odmar* to be Governour of his Eldeſt Son, and his Vice-Roy in all the Country of *Quinzay*, and *Cambalu*, as far as the Sea, and the Mountains bordering upon *China*; and another for *Axalla* to be Lieutenant General of his Army, with an expreſs command to every

every Province, where it was to march, to obey him as himself.

The news of this Commission, given to Prince *Axalla*, being noised abroad every where as far as the Camp, made the Souldiers and Captains rejoyce in an extraordinary manner. Every one was glad of it, not only because of the worth and deservings of the General, but also because of the good turns and expressions of his affection, which he had given to every one. Chiefly *Sinopes*, was overjoyed to hear this pleasing news, because he was related to *Axalla*, and had been promoted by him to the chiefest Commands of the Army. *Odmar* was left at *Cambalu*, to prepare for his Journey to *Quinzay*, and was mightily glad of his employment. The Emperour gave him Instructions, how he should behave himself in his Government, for the publick good. He commanded him, that as soon as the Young Prince his Son should attain to ten years of Age, that he should bring him up in business, and that he should acquaint him with all affairs, that he might learn betimes to do service to his Country; but before that Age, he would not suffer him to know any thing of business, but that he should live as Children of his Age. He was called *Cam Sentrochio* or *Tajochien*, which word in the *Parthian* tongue signifies, *the Love of Men*. This Name had been given him by the Old Emperour his Grand-Father in his Fathers absence. And this Name was not improper, for he was mighty well beloved, chiefly in the Province of his Nativity, from whence his Father could never take him, to carry him to *Samarcande*, where the Empress his Mother lived, for

for the Inhabitants of *Quinzay* imagin'd that if they loſt the ſight of him they ſhould loſe all. Therefore the Emperour, was willing to gratifie ſo extraordinary an affection, and their earneſt intreaties, to leave him at *Quinzay*.

When *Tamerlan* had ſetled all his affairs, he took the way to *Samercande*, where he intended to make his conſtant abode, and to enrich and embelliſh this place of his Nativity, that it might be worthy of his ſucceſſours, and that there they might conſtantly dwell. The Prince was grown ſolitary, for his inclination to devotion had inclined him to a melancholly temper. He was ſo much delighted with contemplation, and was weaned ſo much from the diſturbances of Courts and Armies, that ſome think that he would have forſaken the ſociety of men, had not a Principle of honour, and the intereſt of his Family retained him: He was therefore, ſo far from thinking upon any new expedition, that all his thoughts were employed how to keep what he had Conquer'd, for he was afraid of the unconſtancy of Fortune, that had alwayes ſmiled upon him. He knew that her frowns are not to be avoided, if men are not contented with the favours that ſhe hath beſtowed upon them, but ſtill preſs her for more, and weary her by their importunities. But we muſt not aſcribe to Fortune alone, all the happineſs and the continual ſucceſſes of *Tamerlan*, but to God, to the Great God of Hoſts, for whom he had a great reſpect and reverence. Therefore God favoured all his deſigns, gave victory to his Armies, and defeated all his enemies.

In the mean while, *Axalla* was glad of his Commiſſion

miſſion, was buſie in reducing the Imperial Army to that poſture that the Emperour deſired. For this purpoſe, he gathered together all the Old Souldiers, who had been disbanded, and who had been too long at reſt in his judgement, with them he formed a new *Militia*. He ſent towards *Moſcovy* to take from the Frontiers, ſome Troops of horſe for his own Guard, for he knew their faithfulneſs and courage! He march'd ſome dayes in the way with the Emperour, diſcourſing with him about the concerns of his Army. And to that which he propoſed to the Prince, he either diminiſh'd or added what he judged convenient, for without flattery one may very ſafely ſay, that no man, was more skilful in affairs of War than *Tamerlan*. *Axalla* was eſteem'd next to him, beſt able to contrive or execute in the ſame manner, and as punctually as the Prince was wont to do great deſigns.

The Emperour in his march was very ſlow, that all his attendants, who were many in number might follow him, and becauſe of a great deal of baggage and carriages. *Axalla* only was weary of this ſlow pace, he long'd to be at *Samarcande*, where he was to enter into his office. So that when the Prince, who loved hunting, becauſe it is an image of War, and an exerciſe that prepares the body for greater labours, was deſirous to ſtay in any place fit for this ſport, *Axalla* endeavoured to draw him from it as much as he could towards *Samarcande*. *Tamerlan* arrived thither about the end of the Summer.

The Empreſs had been brought to bed, and was up again. The whole City for the birth of this young Prince, and for the ſafe arrival of the Em-

Emperour was full of sports, playes, and other divertisements, which were again renewed at the Childs Circumcision. But *Axalla* endeavoured to lose no time, he sollicited the Emperour and his Ministers to furnish him with his Instructions, for in the greatest times of pleasures the Emperour had his hours, which he spent in the publick affairs, from which nothing could take him off. When all things were ready, *Axalla* took his leave of his Imperial Majesty, to go to the Camp. He had with him twenty thousand horse, most young men of the Court, for the Emperour desired these young blades to be brought up rather in the exercise of Arms, than in the pleasures of a Town. It was his custome not to promote any to an employment, till after he had been actually in Arms. Those persons only excepted, who attended upon him.

About his time the Emperour received news, from the Prince of *Tanais*, Governour of *Syria* and *Ægypt*, that all things were quiet in his Provinces, which gave him a great content. He took then a delight to embellish his City of *Samarcande*, and chiefly in building a most glorious Temple, which he named the *Temple of Solomon*; and appointed it to be his own and his Successours Tomb.

He caused the chief spoils, which he had taken from his enemies to be hung up in it, and caused the several battles that he had won, and the Nations that he had conquered to be ingraven for Posterity to view. (And as he said) for to acknowledge to his great God, the favours that he had received from him. He had with him a great many Christians, skilful in several Arts and Sciences, whom

whom he had brought from all places, where he had been with his Armies, or who had been recommended to him for their skill. For them he built a Temple and called it by the Name of *Jesus Christ* the Son of God. *Axalla*, and many others of the same Religion, were the best and chiefest Souldiers of his Army, for the Prince had confidence in them. He trusted them as much as his natural Subjects, and more than the most of the zealous followers of Mahomet. He had given orders all over his Empire, that *Christians* should have free liberty to exercise their Religion, and that *Jesus Christ*, the Son of God, should be honoured and reverenced by all the World. The Christian devotions were performed every day in the Army, without molestation or hindrance. And the Emperour had in his dominions many Countries where the Inhabitants were all Christians. He gave orders that they should have liberty to profess their own Religion, and be in as much esteem and favour as those of the *Mahometan* profession, because, as he said, they worshipped but one only God, and that they denied all pluralities as well as himself. He hated all Idolaters in such a manner, that wherever he went he pulled down their Idols, he enslaved their persons, and commanded them to be esteem'd so. He could not have a greater joy than when any of his own or the Christian Religion discourse to him of holy principles and precepts. When their lives were without vain-glory he esteem'd them the more. When they were not like certain hypocrites, who had nothing but an outward sanctity, by which they endeavour'd to surprise the minds of the people and to get an-

ſteem amongſt men. He wondred moſt at the relation that was given him of men, who ot their own accord have forſaken the World, for Jeſus Chriſts ſake, to live only upon dry meats and without taſte, in loanſome Deſarts, denying to themſelves all the pleaſures of life, to embrace that which they judg'd to be moſt pleaſing to God. When he heard of the ſtrange perſecutions, which Chriſtians ſuffered under the Heathen Emperours, he was grieved, and this grief ſtirred up in him an inward affection for thoſe that were of that Religion.

So that this great Prince had in him two good qualities, which cauſed him to be well beloved by all the World, *Piety* and *Juſtice*. Three times every week, he executed Juſtice to his Subjects in the City of *Samarcande*, ſeating himſelf in his Throne with a Majeſty well becoming the Monarch of the greateſt part of the World: But all this glory, in which he appeared, hinder'd him not from valuing the caſe of the poor and deſpicable, more than that of the rich. Other days were deſigned to ſit in Council with his chief Miniſters, to conſider of his weighty affairs of State. In that place no perſon could be ſo bold as to diſguiſe the Truth, or to act or ſpeak paſſionately without hazarding his Princes diſpleaſure. In this occaſion, he ſhewed not that indulgence, which he expreſſed in all other occaſions and actions of his life.

In this manner, he cauſed himſelf to be dreaded and beloved of all his Subjects, and chiefly of his Domeſticks, whom he never put out of their employments, but when he was thereunto forced by ſome ill behaviour or relapſes in wickedneſs, which could not well be pardoned. He never diſmiſs'd

diſmiſs'd thoſe who had ſerved the Emperour his Unkle, but retain'd them all in his ſervice and increaſed their wages, to remove or quallifie in ſome reſpects, the diſpleaſure they had conceived for ſo great a loſs. He beſtowed great gifts upon ſtrangers to win their affections, and uſe them in times of need. This wiſe and judicious dealing was not unknown to many great men of the *Moſcovites* Court and Council, who were the better every year for the Tribute, which their Maſter ſent in monies to the Emperour. For he ſcarce kept any part of it for himſelf, but gave it to them, that he might oblige them the more to be his Creatures, and ſend him intelligence of any thing that related to his intereſt. He was ſo punctual and exact in his Revenues, that thoſe, who had the management of them, were obliged to give him an account every three months. In an hour he viewed over the Receipts and Expences of his large Empire. He had a great reſpect for his *Super-Intendant* or *Lord Treaſurer*, for he was a man of noted integrity, free from bribes or corruption. He received his orders from the Princes one mouth at every moment. He had orders to pay off the Penſions of the Princes, and chief Officers of the Crown without leaving this buſineſs to under Agents: Such perſons were to ſatisfie meaner Officers, and pay off the other expences of the Empire. But of all theſe payments the chief Treaſurer was to be anſwerable in his own perſon, and of all the miſdemeanours of his underlings.

Therefore this Employment, was very dangerous in this Empire. Two were put to death by the Executioner, becauſe they had not prefer'd the Princes

intereſt to their own private benefit. Now the Revenues of the Emperour were not certain, for he increaſed or diminiſh'd them according as need required.

After the death of the laſt Emperour, he cauſed all the currant Coyn to be Stamp'd with his own Image, prohibiting all other of any former impreſſion. When he was at *Samarcande*, he reformed many things in his Incomes. The report went about that he was reſolved to make a great ſtock of monies, but no man knew the cauſe. He was naturally very liberal, which gain'd him the hearts of all the World. When he had paſſed over a day without beſtowing ſome Gift, he commonly ſaid that he had ſpent it in vain. By giving, he ſaid, Men became like God, whoſe Gifts never any body refuſed.

But to return to *Axalla*. As ſoon as he was in the Army, he cauſed all the Old Orders to be renewed and publiſh'd, which the Emperour obſerved, when he was with them. They had been neglected every where through the Chieftains fault, who, to deſtroy the ancient diſcipline, had brought in forreign cuſtomes not fit to be obſerved by the *Parthians* and *Tartarians*. When therefore he had called together all the Chief Commanders and other Officers, he repreſented to them the diſorders intreating them to endeavour with him a reformation, to bring all things to their firſt State, and re-eſtabliſh the ancient diſcipline, which obliged them to be confined within their Camp, and there to cauſe their Souldiers to ſubſiſt, who were grown heavy and idle by their abode in Cities and Garriſons, whereas in the Camp the Souldi-

er

er is uſed to work, every one in his turn to ſtrengthen their fortifications. For which purpoſe, there were alwaies in the Imperial Armies thirty thouſand men appointed. To avoid all confuſion in the receiving of orders, amongſt the Infantry, he gave an under Officer to every ten Souldiers, which Officer was to be governed by another, who was over one hundred men: And he was to be commanded by a Collonel, who had a thouſand, and he by another Superior Officer, who had ten thouſand under him: but all were to be govern'd by the Major General. Amongſt the Cavalry there was this Order, one hundred horſe men were commanded by a Captain, who was under a Collonel that was to be over a thouſand, and he to be under a Superior Officer, that commanded ten thouſand. So that orders were to be diſtributed all over the Camp, by the ſeveral Officers from the General. That he might better eſtabliſh this order, he muſter'd all his Army, and ſetled it in that manner. It contained threeſcore thouſand foot, commanded by ſix chief Collonels under the General, and forty thouſand horſe with four chief Officers. Amongſt them were a thouſand light horſe named *Stradiots*. Beſides theſe, the General had his particular Guards to wait upon his perſon, they were in number two thouſand horſe and four thouſand foot. This was the condition of the Army ſtyled Imperial, the others had not that name. That which was in *Syria* was compoſed of twenty thouſand horſe and forty thouſand foot. That of *China* had the ſame number, and that about *Cambalu* were as many. There were two others,

one upon the borders of *Moscovy*, and the other towards the *Chersonesus*, each containing the same number of men. These inferior Armies were not to keep the Field, but when need required, but the Imperial Army was one entire in one Body, governed as we have said before, and able to strengthen the others, and assist them in case of need.

Azalla, who could by no means endure idleness, employed all his care to settle in good order the Army under his Command, and endeavoured to find out all the Engines of War, and Artillery used by Christians with so much success, as well to attack as to defend Cities and Towns. In these arts he endeavoured to be skilful, and for that purpose, he made use of the Jews. For by their Trade in all parts, they brought to him all the new Inventions, that they could meet with in forreign Countries to communicate them to others, to whom they were unknown. That which pleased him most was the Invention of Guns, which a Grecian brought him, after the death of *Andronicus* with Powder, which he tried in the presence of all the Army to their great astonishment, for they could not imagine how it came to pass, that it should have so great a power and strength. The advantages expected from it, caused the Emperour to be at a great expence, to purchase some from *Christians*, and to fetch persons out of *Europe*, that could make Gun-powder and cast Canon, and other pieces of Artillery. In the Tartarian Army before this they had certain Engines able to cast great stones or other shot with an incredible swiftness, but that was not to be com-

compared to great Guns and Powder. The Emperour commanded that the honour of bringing in this new Invention ſhould be aſcribed to Prince *Axalla*, and cauſed it to be recorded in the Hiſtory of his time, for a remembrance of this great ſervice, which he had render'd him by this Invention for the glory and increaſe of his Empire. The Emperour was not ungrateful to him, for he gave him above a million of yearly Rent beſides other gifts. *Odmar* had almoſt as much. And the Revenues of the Prince of *Tanais* were very great. I ſhall not mention the penſions of many other perſons, who were rewarded beyond their deſervings.

The meaneſt Souldier, that ſhewed himſelf courageous by ſome noted action, was ſure of a recompence, which encouraged all the reſt to behave themſelves well, and opened a way for him to riſe to the higheſt Dignities of the Empire. In this manner honours and rewards were diſtributed equally according to every mans merits. This Juſtice which *Tamerlan* religiouſly obſerved was like a Chain, that bound together all the ſeveral parts of the Empire, ſo that they were thereby kept from falling aſunder, and united againſt all aſſaults and attempts.

As ſoon as War was kindled it was ſpeedily extinguiſhed, becauſe every one brought his helping hand to ſtop the progreſs. There was an admirable order eſtabliſhed in all the new Conqueſts, that the people could not eaſily rebel. But when any revolt happen'd againſt all expectation and precaution, the ſevere puniſhment of the firſt offenders frighted the reſt into a peaceable compliance.

By this means, through the courage and wiſe

conduct of the Prince, this Empire was become the greatest and most flourishing of the whole World, and was doubtless at its highest pitch and growth.

Tamerlan was become heavy by the number of his years. His Children were advancing in age, and all men began to adore the rising Suns, but the Emperours affection for them, hindered him from being Jealous or displeased for the extraordinary respects paid to their persons. He was afraid that after his decease, indiscretion, flattery, or wicked Counsels, would separate and divide their hearts with the Empire, which he delivered to them in peace. This fear made him often sigh and wish for a third Son, that he might be able to reconcile the two others together, when they shall be divided as it happens often in great families.

This foresight of the time to come, proved to be well grounded, for in a moment this great Monarchy was overthrown, by the divisions and hatred of the two brethren, who could never be reconciled. About this time news came of a revolt at *Babylon*, but Prince *Axalla*'s suddain appearance there stifled all commotions in their beginning and returned to his Camp. A little after, he had another occasion offered him, to express his valour; for *Natolia*, began to revolt to the Turks with some of the neighbouring Provinces. He sent to *Tamerlan* to give him information and receive his orders to march thither with his Army to pacifie all troubles and settle the Country in peace.

CHAP.

CHAP. VIII.

Callepin, Bajazet's *Son promoted to the Empire, after his Fathers death. His War with* Tamerlan. *He is defeated by* Axalla. Tamerlan's *ſickneſs and death.*

AS ſoon as *Bajazet* had ended his dayes in the City of *Samarcande*, and the news was brought to the *Turks*, they took his ſecond Son named *Callepin* to advance him upon his Fathers Throne. This promotion, together with the fair hopes, that he gave of his perſon, had encouraged them to raiſe a powerful Army to retake again *Natolia*, which they judged the eaſier to accompliſh, becauſe the diviſions of the *Greek Emperours* family would not ſuffer him to intermedle in the War, for his Brothers were in Rebellion againſt him, and kept him ſo employed, that he had no leaſure to look abroad to the affairs of *Aſia*. But *Axalla* being informed of their deſigns, ſent word to the Emperour to acquaint him with all their proceedings. This attempt of the *Turks* was not only againſt the Greek Empire, but alſo againſt *Tamerlan*, who ſaw himſelf obliged to prevent the miſchief intended. *Democares* was ſecretly employed to gather together Souldiers in *Perſia*, to ſend them to *Callepin*, with whom he purpoſed to joyn with his party. *Axalla* could not well proceed, before he had the Emperours orders in ſo weighty a buſineſs. He ſent him word, that his Army was in as good a condition, as could be expected and ready for action

on. And that he thought it best to meet the enemy in his own Country, and not expect his coming into *Persia*: for all the frontiers were secure and in peace, but in *Persia* the Inhabitants were unconstant and not well confirmed in their obedience.

He sent word also to the Emperour that *Lichibanes* the Governour of *Natolia*, had taken away all his Souldiers out of *Bursa*, pulled down the fortifications, because he was not able to keep it, and that he was retreated with all his Cavalry and Infantry to the foot of the Mountains, which he had seised with a resolution there to expect the orders of his Imperial Majesty with more men, which he wonted, because in all the Provinces, there was no Town of any strength to make a resistance against the enemy. When the Emperour heard all these things, he called together his Council, where it was resolved that Prince *Axalls* should without delay with his Army march into *Natolia* to joyn with *Lichibanes*. That *Odmar*, with the forces of *Quinzay* and *Cambalu*, should go thither through the borders of *Moscovia*, and *Zerisanes* should strengthen his Army with twenty thousand horse. That an Embassadour should be dispatched to the Prince of *Moscovia*, to desire the ten thousand horse, which he was obliged by his Treaty of Peace to send in such like occasions to assist *Tamerlan*. That the Prince of *Tanais* likewise should secure his Government, and take with him all his horse to meet the Army at the rendevouz.

That in the mean while, the Governour of *Babylon* should raise twenty thousand horse and fifty

fifty thouſand ſoot in *Perſia*, beſides other levies ſhould be made in all other Provinces. That to haſten him the more, Commiſſions ſhould be ſent him from the Emperour with Commiſſioners to chooſe proper and able men, ſome to bear arms, others for the works and labours of the Camp: Orders were alſo ſent to all the chief Cities of the Empire, commanding the Magiſtrates to make proviſions of victuals and other neceſſaries, and convey them ſafe to the Army, by men appointed for that purpoſe. *Zamay* alſo the Governour of *Saebetay* was ordered to go with all ſpeed to *Deriſtan* to receive all the Troops, that ſhould come thither with the proviſions for the belly, and other neceſſaries for Souldiers, and ſend them to the Army. The Emperour cauſed it to be raiſed abroad, that he would be himſelf at the Head of his Army, and puniſh the *Turks* for their bold attempts.

In the mean while, the Imperial Army was marching to the borders, increaſing dayly by the acceſſion of new Troops. *Axalla* their General was overjoyed to be employed in this glorious expedition, he had ſecret orders to put a period to this War, and not to expect the Emperours coming, who advanced towards the Army with a ſlow pace, being retarded by the indiſpoſition of his body tormented with a diſeaſe. He was deſirous that *Axalla* ſhould put an end to this War; for that purpoſe, he had given him the whole Command over ſo much of his Treaſure as was needful, as well as over the Army.

The Prince of *Tanais*, who had orders to ſecure his Government, and then to joyn with *Axalla*

alla, ſent ſeveral parties of horſe before him to the Imperial Army, with ten thouſand foot, which he took out of *Tauris*, and eight thouſand horſe. They were commanded by a Lord named *Abiran*, a faithful Servant of the Emperours, and *Axalla*'s real Friend.

In his way through *Armenia*, he drew out of the Garriſons twenty thouſand horſe to joyn them with the Imperial Army, which conſiſted then of fourſcore thouſand horſe and one hundred thouſand foot. *Tamerlan* had as many more gathered out of *Moſcovy* and the province of *Sachetay*, but he could not in ſix months joyn with *Axalla*, for he was ſo diſeaſed, that he could not make more haſte. There were ſome fears amongſt his Courtiers, that his diſtemper would increaſe and grow more dangerous, and that it would oblige him to return to *Samarcande*, becauſe the pain, which he felt in his ſide, became every day worſe and worſe, ſo that it tormented his body, and had taken away his ſtomack, by degrees he grew feebler. None but his chief Officers and Domeſticks knew this, they were all afraid of death, which was not to be avoided. A certain Aſtrologer had foretold that immediately before his death, he ſhould win a battle againſt all the Eaſt. Another ſent him word to take heed of the thirteenth day of the Moon and the ninth moneth of the year. Theſe predictions made the Emperour believe, that he ſhould die in a battle and not in his bed, but this thought of leaving the World, did in no wiſe trouble him, but often would ſpeak of his mortality, and of the debt he owed to Nature. He was expecting every day *Odmar*, who was coming

ing

ing to him with the Young Prince his Son, for as he ſaid, he intended to preſent him to the Army, and to ſhew him thoſe perſons who were to ſerve him, as ſoon as God ſhould take him out of the World. But he was very deſirous to embrace him once more, before he gave up the Ghoſt, and ſend him afterwards to the Empreſs, his Mother, to *Samarcande* with *Odmar*. And though his diſeaſe was very troubleſome, he had taken a reſolution if need required to go over the *Boſphore* of *Thracia*, to *Conſtantinople* and into *Greece*, to encourage his men by his preſence, to endeavour to cut off, and root out all that dangerous brood of *Turks* and ſecure his intereſt by that means in his new Conqueſts from all future invaſion.

Whiles the Emperour ſtaid for the Prince his Son with a great longing, *Axalla* was buſie in his Army, ſpur'd on with an earneſt deſire of Glory. He was ſo ſpeedy, that he entered into *Turcomania* at the ſame time, as fifteen thouſand *Georgians*, ſtrong and warlike men, overtook his Army. He marched to *Gorga*, where the Governour of the Provinces met him to welcome him and receive from him, the Orders that *Axalla* had to deliver to him in the Emperours name, but he would not undertake any thing till the coming of the Prince of *Tanais*, for that purpoſe, he made all ſpeed poſſible with fifteen thouſand horſe and thirty thouſand foot, which he brought with him. As ſoon as he was come up with his party to the Imperial Army, *Axalla* according to *Tamerlans* orders, gave the Prince the command of the Vanguard. The Governour of the Country had the Rear. He was a perſon well eſteem'd

by

by the Emperour, because of his virtuous disposition. His Government reached as far as *Persia* and *Syria*.

But that we may better understand this part of the History, we must take notice, that as soon as *Tamerlan* had conquered all *Natolia*, he gave a great part of it back to the Greek Emperour upon condition, that he should pay as a Tribute every year four hundred thousand Ducats of Gold, and eight hundred thousands Livers of Silver. *Axalla* sent therefore to this Prince to acquaint him with his coming to *Gorga*, where he gathered all the Troops together, which *Tamerlan* sent from all parts to make up the body of an Army, which he himself was in his march to command to do him the same good Offices, which he had formerly done to his Father, therefore he intreated him to reconcile the differences of his own family to prevent a forreign evil, which increased visibly to the eye, and which would cast him into the same inconveniency as his Father was before him, if he did not remedy it betimes. He sent to advise him, that if he did not quench the domestick dissentions and troubles of his family, he would but give an advantage to his mortal enemy, who would become stronger through his weakness and troubles. This seasonable and wholesome advice, made no impression upon the minds of this Prince or of his Brothers. They had shared the Empire amongst themselves, and were at variance about their portions; contrary to their desires, they help'd to increase and enlarge the Turkish Empire, whereof the Prince was likely to succeed their Father, without being any wayes related

related to him. They were ſo fooliſh as to be Jealous of *Tamerlan*'s Embaſſadours and angry at the meſſage, for they believed at firſt that the ſuccours that *Axalla* brought, were not above ten or twelve thouſand horſe, but when they underſtood from the mouth of the Embaſſador, an able and a wiſe man, that the Army had ſo many thouſand horſe and foot as to make a dreadful body, inſtead of rejoycing or expreſſing their thankfulneſs, they began to fear that *Tamerlan* had ſent his men againſt them, as well as againſt *Callepin*: Neither the remembrance of *Tamerlans* former generoſity expreſſed to their deceaſed Father, nor the Embaſſadours endeavours, to aſſure them of the Emperours good and ſincere intentions to do them no harm, could not remove theſe ill grounded ſuſpitions out of their minds. They were ſo blind and brutiſh, that they would not admit of a Truce amongſt themſelves, ſo great was their hatred for one another. At the return of this uſeleſs Embaſſie, *Axalla* underſtood where *Callepin* lay with his Army, and how many men he had. Therefore after the general muſters, he marched to ſeek out the Enemy in *Caramania*. *Callepin* was at firſt aſtoniſhed at the dilligent proceedings of the Army, but much more, when at the return of the ſcouts, he underſtood its order, diſcipline and number of men; for he had imagined that it would not be above ten or twelve thouſand men. When he had learned the truth, he called together his Council. All the Commanders adviſed that *Callepin*, who was the only perſon alive of the *Ottoman* family, ſhould not hazard his perſon in the battle, that he was

to

to be desired to stay at a distance, and see the consequence and end of the fight. That though his Army was strong and powerful, because the *Persians* and *Mamelucks*, two warlike Nations, made up the greatest part of it: It was to be feared if things succeeded not well with them, they would conclude a peace to the prejudice of the *Turks* with the victorious enemy. When *Callepin* understood that the Emperour in person, was advancing after *Axalla* with another Army, as numerous and as brave as the former, he began to repent that he had awakened the drowsie Lyon. The Greek Emperour also imagining, that all this Army was designed to take from him his Country, as well as to drive away the *Turks*, sent to conclude a league with *Callepin*, which after it was agreed, too the *Turk* desired some succours, to help him against *Tamerlans* Army, which was there purposely to defend the *Greek* from the *Turk*, the common enemy of both. He alleadged these reasons to strengthen his ridiculous fancy: That in all appearance the Emperour would not be content, with such narrow limits to his Empire as the *Egean* Sea, but would enlarge it beyond *Constantinople*. That they ought to joyn together, for the security of their dominions, and repulse that ambitious Prince into his own Nest in *Tartary*. That he could not approve his Fathers proceedings, nor would follow his footsteps, for after his Fathers decease, he had refused to give any encouragement to *Tamerlans* Governour in *Natolia*: That his Army had advanced into that Province without his knowledge and consent, and therefore he should endeavour to beat him out. He laboured to make the *Turk*

sensible

ſenſible of theſe things, that he might conclude a confederacy with him to his own ruin; but the *Tartars* were ſo advanced, that tho they had both a deſire to joyn, they could not have then the means; for the *Ottoman* Army could not give back without deſtroying themſelves. There was a neceſſity for them to fight. The greateſt part were *Perſians* and *Mamelucks*, and baniſh'd men driven out of their Country, becauſe they would not ſubmit to *Tamerlan*. It was therefore very dangerous for them to delay the battle, or to retreat.

The *Baſſa*, who commanded in the Turkiſh army, had fifteen thouſand Perſian Horſe, good fighting men, and thirty thouſand Foot led by the Prince of *Tauris*, one of the baniſhed men. The *Mamelucks* were in number about twenty thouſand Horſe commanded by him that was choſen their *Sultan*, who near five years had been making war in *Arabia*, but had been driven from thence by *Tamerlan*'s men, and entertained by *Callepin*, whoſe Confederate he was, in hopes, that if their affairs ſucceeded, he might receive from him ſuch aſſiſtance as might help him to recover *Syria* and *Egypt*, and all the Dominions of the *Mamelucks*. Beſides theſe, there were twenty five thouſand Turkiſh Horſe, and thirty thouſand foot, with ſix thouſand more, that *Callepin* had choſen for his Guard. The grand *Baſſa* was an experienced Warriour, and a brave Commander. With theſe Troops he imagin'd himſelf able to overthrow the enemies Army. And was the more encouraged to fight, becauſe, he ſuppoſed, that the greateſt part of the Tartarian Forces were no cordial Friends of the *Parthians*, nor well wiſhers to their Empire. This

Bassa was the same who had been taken the day before the great Battle, where *Bajazet* was made Prisoner, unto whom *Tamerlan* gave his freedom and a stately horse. He boasted amongst his own men, that he was acquainted with the *Tartarians* manner of fighting, and that the greatest advantage which they had obtained was by the taking of *Bajazet*, but that more had been killed on their side than on the *Turks*, which was very true. Therefore in the Counsel of affairs, which *Callepin* had called together, this was his advice, that they should not suffer their Prince to be in the Army the day of the fight, for fear that he should fall into the same misfortune as his Father before him.

Now in the Survey and Mustering of the Emperours Army, *Axalla* found that it had fourscore thousand Horse, and one hundred and threescore thousand Foot. Threescore thousand were old Troops kept in pay by *Tamerlan*; brave Souldiers accustomed to fight. *Sinopes*, an excellent and a skillful Commander, led fourscore thousand Foot, chosen men, of a stout resolution.

As soon therefore as the enemy drew so near, that *Axalla* had notice of their march, he called a Council of War, and caused his Army to advance softly towards them. He knew that *Gomalach*, about thirty leagues off from the place where he was with his men, was an advantageous post to him, who should first recover it; he caused therefore all his Army, very desirous of a battle, to march thither. The Turks went slowly and would not forsake the Sea-side, that furnished them with plenty of all manner of provisions

viſions. In the Tartarian Army there was no ſuch abundance, for want began to be a complaint.

Axalla commanded a *Parthian* Captain, named *Stucan*, a Collonel of the light horſe, to advance towards the *Turks*, and to obſerve their motion, that he might not be ſurprized unawares. This Officer, a man fit for a great undertaking, very active and ingenious, had under his command a Soldier of that Country, where the *Turks* were then incamp'd, who, underſtanding the language of the place, and being faithful to his Leader, was able to do him ſervice, in a deſign that he had thought upon, and imagin'd to be feaſible. But before he would attempt it he took adviſe with Prince *Axalla*, who approved of it, and encouraged him to accompliſh it. For that purpoſe *Stucan* with three thouſand Horſe advances before his Army ten leagues, as far as *Regeni*, where he met with ſome *Turks*, whom he made Priſoners, and by them he underſtood, that the Van of the *Turks* Army was in ſight. He went out upon a high ground to take notice of it, and reſolved in the dark to enter into their Camp by the means of this Souldier, that knew the language, and ſhould pretend, that he had been ſent to ſhew the way to two thouſand *Perſian* Horſe, which he brought with him, and at the ſame moment *Stucan* with his followers ſhould enter in amongſt the *Turks*, and ſurpriſe them in diſorder. All this happened according to the project and their expectation; for two hundred men going before with this Souldier, they entered in amongſt the *Turks*, and were immediately followed by *Stucan* and his party, that kil-

led above three thousand of the Van-guard. The rest were afraid to stir, for though all the Cavalry mounted at the first Alarm, they were not so bold as to pursue after *Stucan* in his retreat, but stood to their ground, imagining that the whole Army was at hand. They chose rather to lose a few fore-runners and loose Troops, than to indanger their whole body. When day began to break the *Turks* Bassa wondered at his mistake, and to understand that onely three thousand Horse had done that execution and disorder'd his Army, for he learn'd that the *Tartarians* were yet about ten leagues from his Camp. He was highly incensed at this affront: When therefore he understood, by some Runawayes, that provisions were but scarce in the *Tartarian* Army, he resolved to wait for it, in the place where he was and to fortifie himself in such a manner, that he might not be forced to fight against his will. For by that delay, he hoped to waste all *Axalla*'s provisions and so to weary him, as to oblige him to retreat back again. Now *Axalla* imagin'd not that the *Bassa* was so well informed of the condition of his Army, but to prevent that design, he purposed to lay a snare for him, and cause him to fall into it. A little after his Army marched within five leagues of the *Turks*. Whiles the Trenches were making, *Axalla* drew up his men in order of battle, and advanced with them, within two leagues of the Turks Army in a plain ground, from whence he went in person to take notice, how they lay intrenched in their Camp, from whence they had their provisions, and what road their Convoys of victuals and their Purveyours kept. When he had well observed all particulars, he

reſolved either to force the enemies to fight him, or to lodge between them and the Sea, ſo to cut off their proviſions: For that purpoſe, he advanced with his Army to their Trenches, as if he had an intent to aſſault them. In the mean while, without noiſe, he had employed ſome to fortifie a Camp and prepare lodgings for his Army, towards the Sea. The *Baſſa* would not look out of his Camp, therefore he knew not what was preparing. He had taken notice, that the *Tartarian* Army had faced him eight hours in order of battle, and expected to be aſſaulted in his Trenches, which he earneſtly deſired, but when inſtead of that, news came to him that they were incamp'd near his fortifications, between him and the Sea, in a place where they would intercept all his proviſions, and that he ſhould not be able to recover any without great danger and difficulty, he was ſtrangely ſurpriſed and aſtoniſhed, which cauſed him to call together the Officers of his Army, to adviſe what to do in this juncture. It was there reſolved, that if they underſtood that the *Tartars* would hinder them from all correſpondency with the Sea, that then they muſt fight, but before it was reſolved to endeavour by ſtrong Guards and parties to draw proviſions into the Camp; according to this advice the *Baſſa*, as ſoon as day appeared, ſent out ſix thouſand Horſe of his beſt Souldiers, towards the Sea, with orders If they met with any oppoſition that then they ſhould return into the Camp. They hapned to light upon the *Tartarian* main Guard, that charged them ſo vigorouſly that they were beaten back, and forced to return faſter than they came

on. When the *Bassa* saw what had happen'd he understood the *Tartars* design, and that there was a necessity for him to hazard a fight. Therefore the next night he drew out some of his Army to take possession of a Hill, which was nearer to him than to his enemies, with an intent to annoy them with his Artillery, which he caused to be planted there, as likewise to hinder *Axalla* from placing any Troops upon it, because it was able to do a kindness to him that should have it first. As soon as it was day *Axalla* had news that there was a stirring in the *Turks* Camp more than ordinary, as if they intended to decamp. To understand the truth, he put himself at the head of twenty thousand Horse, and with them he advanced to observe their motion, resolved to fight them if they intended to retreat. But when he took notice nearer of their Actions, he perceived their purpose, he called therefore the Prince of *Tanais*, and *Sinopes*, telling them that he was not willing that the *Turks* should intrench themselves upon the Hill which he shewed them, because it would be prejudicial to his Army, and that therefore it was requisite to drive them from thence, before they were there well setled.

Sinopes had immediately orders to assault them with twenty thousand of the stoutest Infantry of the Army. *Axalla* doubted not of the Victory, if he could but succeed in this attempt upon those that were upon the Hill, which was scituate in such a place, that the Horse were not able to get near it, because of a morish ground lying round about, near a league from the Hill. But the

foot

foot could march up with eaſe. *Axalla* had great hopes of ſucceſs, becauſe he knew the courages of his Infantry that he employed, which was the ſtouteſt in the World, and the noble and brave ſoul of *Sinopes* their Captain who led them on, and would do all that could be expected from a skilful and reſolute Commander.

The Tartarian Army ſtood in order of battle over againſt the Turks. The Infantry was Commanded to advance, that it might back *Sinopes*, and be ready at his motion to aſſiſt him. He was reſolved, if the Enemy was obſtinate to defend this Hill to fight on foot, and to employ all his might and force to drive him from thence. The Prince of *Tanais* was at the Head of his Cavalry over againſt the *Turks* Horſe. Neither of them was able to do any good to thoſe that were to fight for the poſſeſſion of the Hill. *Sinopes* by *Axalla's* advice, had taken a Compaſs round under a high piece of ground, which hindered the enemies from receiving his motion, whiles he ſtood ready to aſſiſt them.

So that *Sinopes* broke in upon them with his twenty thouſand foot and diſordered them, before they were aware. An Enemy ſurpriſed, is half overcome. The Turks, aſtoniſhed with this ſuddain onſet, knew not whither all the Infantry or but a part, had aſſaulted them. This conceit filled them with apprehenſions. At that time the reſt of the Army ſtood in order of battle at one end of the Marſh, and both Armies were in ſight of one another very ſilent, but when the *Turks* perceived what was acted upon the Hill, they made all haſte to help their Comrades and reſiſt the *Tartars*. The *Baſſa* being a

very skiful Commander, ſent away all his Infantry to ſuccour his men, who had been broken at the firſt charge of the *Tartarian* foot, and had left them the poſſeſſion of the Top of the Hill. By this means, they got the advantage of the ground, ſo that they encountered the *Turks* with more eaſe, whereas the *Turks* ſtood upon a ſhelving ground, which hindered them from uſing their Weapons with that advantage as the others could. But the great companies of *Janiſaries*, who were marching to the aſſiſtance of their companions, had doubtleſs overpowr'd the *Tartarian* foot, in poſſeſſion of the Mountain, if *Axalla*, upon ſight of their approach, had not diſpatch'd away at the ſame moment, twenty thouſand more to renew the fight, and keep up his mens courages againſt the *Janiſaries*. And after them he provided five and twenty thouſand more, that he might march himſelf at their Head, as ſoon as he ſhould ſee any more advancing the Hill from the *Ottoman* Army; for that purpoſe, he alighted off from his Horſe to command them in perſon. When the Prince of *Tanais* underſtood his intent, that he would hazard his perſon in the battle upon the Hill, he ſent to intreat him to leave that to one of his Collonels of the foot, and to ſtay behind to give his orders; telling him, That the whole Army made him the ſame requeſt. *Axalla* reply'd, that the buſineſs then in action was of a high concernment, and that if the Hill were once gain'd, the Victory would follow with eaſe. And that he was reſolved to obey his orders that day and become his Souldier. At that inſtant the reſt of the *Turks* foot was obſerved to move.

Theſe

These were most of them *Janisaries*, they gave a furious assault to the *Tartarian* foot, but when *Axalla* came in with a chosen party, he beat them back and won all the Hill. Before his departure, he caused Trenches to be drawn on that side which look'd towards the *Turks* Army, and left there to command *Sinopes*, who had purchased to himself much honour and glory, by his brave conduct.

The *Tartarians* lost in the several assaults between fifteen and sixteen thousand men, but the *Turks* near thirty thousand. The fight lasted from eight a Clock in the morning till night. The Cavalry all that while stood still without action looking upon the passages upon the Hill, for they could not advance to it, because of the deep Marsh.

The *Turks* discouraged with this loss departed the next night, marching back ten long leagues before they stop'd. The Prince of *Tanais*, *Stucan* and the light Horse followed them close at the heels, and *Axalla* with the rest of his Army made after them, and incamped near the Sea, about two leagues distant from the *Turks*, who were drawing towards *Caramania*.

As soon as the *Bassa*, had recollected his Spirits and was returned to himself, he resolved to incamp and intrench his Army. But the Prince of *Tanais*, angry that he had not been concerned in the Glory of the day before, would not give him the leasure to fortifie himself. Therefore he advanced forward to fight him, so far and with such indiscretion, that when the rest of his Army behind were about to fix their Tents, news

came

came to them, that the Prince was ingaged againſt the *Turks*, and that unleſs he was ſpeedily relieved, he would be cut off with his party. This Report caus'd *Axalla* to ſound a march and with his Cavalry to advance before, when he was come to the banks of a ſmall River in his way, he ſaw the Prince of *Tanais*'s miſtake in venturing over, before he had ſent to ſee what enemies were on the other ſide, for the crafty *Turks* had ordered ten thouſand *Perſian* Horſe to ſtop the Princes party, by skirmiſhing with them. They behaved themſelves ſo bravely, that if the *Baſſa* had not ſent away more to relieve the *Perſians*, the *Tartarians* had cut them all in pieces. But as his intent was but to keep them buſie and employed, and to hinder them from all poſſibilities of a retreat, he diſpatched away twenty thouſand Horſe more, to ſecond the *Perſians*, who ſeem'd to be almoſt all broken. Then the *Tartars* were forced to give back with great loſs, if the Lord *D' Halicen* had not come in with a freſh party, to aſſiſt the Prince of *Tanais*, they had been routed, for the Prince loſt two Horſes under him, and was mounted upon the third. *Stucan* was kill'd, and all his light Horſemen overthrown. When *Axalla* perceived the fault of the Prince of *Tanais*, he was in diſpair to ſee ſo glorious a Victory, which God had given him uſeleſs or loſt through other mens miſcarriage, and folly. Turning therefore to his men in haſte. *Now my dear Comrades*, Cryed he, *we muſt fight not ſo much for the glory of the* Parthians, *as for their lives and ſafety, and for the preſervation of the whole Army,*

Go,

Go, said he, to a body of ten thousand Horse, which he commanded to ride forward, *Go and keep up the fight, I will follow to relieve you or dye with you, that our enemies may see that we will not part with the Victory out of our hands, at so cheap a rate.* A few minutes after, he advanced at the Head of forty thousand Horse, divided into three bodies, which marched all three in a front keeping a Trot. And with them he charged the *Turks*, who were already grown insolent and proud of their success. For since the first onset of the Prince of *Tanais*, they had alwaies had an advantage upon him, and overthrown him in the third charge, this poor Prince was cast to the ground and left as dead, so that his fall had left them the Victory, had not the ten thousand Horse sent by *Axalla* given a furious onset and beaten the enemies back. By this means *Axalla* had time to advance, He was desirous to revenge the *Parthians* losses and snatch the Victory out of the *Turks* hands, and because it was then within two hours of night, the shortness of the time required them to make haste. He marched therefore strait to the Enemy with an intent to oblige him to fight.

At that time the *Bassa* having yet had no hand in the action, wondered to see his men, instead of driving before the ten thousand Horse led by the Lord of *Halicen*, give back and retreat. He advanced therefore with fifteen thousand fresh Horse, with a resolution to end the difference and gain the Victory. His first charge caused the *Tartars* and *Parthians* to give back, but *Axalla* entered into the fight in that moment, with all

all his Horſe, and forced the *Baſſa*'s men to give ground, for they were not able to abide the furious onſet of the *Parthians*, who had a full intent to be reveng'd for the loſs of their Companions; for that purpoſe, they cut in pieces a great many *Spahis*, and of the reſt of the Turkiſh Cavalry. A Governour of *Natolia* named *Lenamen*, who commanded a reſerve of ten thouſand Horſe, coming up to *Axalla* to joyn with him, adventured againſt the *Turks*, but to his loſs, for he had been broken and his men diſorder'd. The greateſt part of them rallied near *Axalla*'s perſon, and charged with him to be reveng'd. They drove back the *Turks* Cavalry with that ſucceſs that they made them run in upon their Infantry, and forſook them immediately afterwards. Fear had ſo great a power upon their minds, and infuſed a ſwiftneſs into their heels. The *Tartarian* Horſe, ſeeing all out of order amongſt the *Turks* foot, dallied not with them, but broke in amongſt the thickeſt; had it not been for the dark night they would have killed every man of them. Above twenty thouſand, moſt part *Janiſaries*, retreated in good order, they got over a River and hindered by that means, the *Tartarian* Horſe from obtaining ſo compleat a Victory as they deſired.

The next day, as ſoon as it appeared, *Axalla* ſent a party of Horſe with the Governour of *Natolia* to purſue after the flying *Turks*, and to hinder them from rallying together in one body. It was a difficult matter to overtake them, for they had marched all night, without ſtopping and that in good Order, commanded by the

Cap-

Captain of the *Janiſaries* named the *Aga*. They complained of their Horſemen, who had forſaken them baſely, when they were couragiouſly reſolved to die for the Service of their Prince, rather than to yield or give ground.

Axalla, remaining ſtill behind upon the bloudy field, caus'd all the dead to be put into the ground, the wounded to be taken care of, and ſent the Prince of *Tanais* into a ſecure place to be healed of a dangerous wound in his Leg, received by an Arrow. He marched next after the *Turks*, for he had heard that the *Baſſa* had got together near fourteen thouſand Horſe. And that he might be able to follow them with more ſpeed, he left behind him all his bag and baggage. And to ſeparate them from the body of *Janiſaries*, he took a nearer way to them that he might get in with them, before they were joyned together.

The *Janiſaries* alſo marching a great pace got as far as the Sea ſide. *Axalla* had commanded ten thouſand Horſe to follow them, and all his foot, that had not yet been ingaged to purſue and hinder them from eſcaping if it were poſſible. They had marched a great way before and fruſtrated all the ſpeed that could be made after them, at *Gallipoli* they took Shipping and ſailed over into *Europe* to ſeek for *Callepin*, who was mightily incenſed againſt the *Baſſa*; for he accuſed him for having forſaken his Army by a ſhameful flight, becauſe he had not choſen an Honourable death to the ſafety of his Life.

In this laſt ingagement, the *Turks* loſt above five

five and forty thousand men, and *Axalla* about twenty thousand. In both, his courage and prudent acting met with great success and happiness. Much was ascribed to chance and fortune. *Stucan* was found dead under his Horse and his Buckler over his Face. His death was much lamented all over the Army, though his furiousness and indiscretion was likely to have ruined them all. They rejoyced all for the safety of the Prince of *Tanais*, who had been as it were snatched out of the Jawes of death by a Miracle.

Axalla congratulated him for his deliverance; but afterwards with mild and yet significant words, shewed him his unadvisedness, in venturing to fight as he did, and obliged him to purchase the Victory at a very dear Rate, with the loss of twenty thousand men, whereas they might have gained it without any danger or spilling of blood with a little patience. The Prince of *Tanais* laid the fault upon *Stucan* and his light Horse, who were advanced too far, and protested that he imagined not the body of the enemies Army so near him as it was. Prince *Axalla* told him that the fear of what might happen, had obliged him to draw with his Army as near to the River as he could.

All these great successes and Victories, which were able to puff up the minds of the ambitious, raised in him no sign of joy, his Soul was rather drooping in a great sadness, which proceeded from the news of the Emperours sickness, of which the Physicians had no good opinion. The great fear of the mischiefs that were

were likely to follow, and the notable alterations in the Empire, made him wish that his employment would have suffered him to have gone and paid his respects to his dear Master and Lord, and taken of him his last farewel. But his Duty could not permit him to be absent at that time, he was forced to put off his departure till another opportunity. He onely writ to his Majesty to acquaint him with the Victories that he had won. He caused his Letters to be Read in the Council assembled for that and other purposes.

But to hinder the enemies retreat into the Mountains, he sent after them many Troops of Horse, and followed them himself with the rest of the Army, for he wished he could speedily put an end to this War.

The *Persians* came in every day by Troops, to submit themselves, and desire the Conquerours Mercy and Pardon for their Revolt. They said, that they had been earnestly sollicited by their Prince, who was killed in the last ingagement. But that which surprised and rejoyced the *Tartarian* Army most was the Head of the Grand *Bassa*, which was brought into the Camp by a Souldier, who had killed him as he endeavoured to fly away, after that the *Persians* had left him. This was the same man, who had been *Tamerlans* pris'ner before *Bajazet* was taken, whom the Emperour sent back so generously. *Axalla* was alwayes in pursuit of the flying Troops of the Turkish Army, all the *Mamelucks*, he killed and allowed them no quarter, because most of them had deserted the Prince

of

of *Tanais* and forsaken him shamefully. But all the rest were so well treated that in fifteen dayes the whole Army was broken and scattered, and all the Maritime Towns taken without much resistance; for they heard no news of *Callepin*, who was gone into *Europe*.

After all this successful proceeding, the season of the year drawing towards Winter, made the Army ask for their Wages. It was thought fit to please the Souldiers; to send them towards *Gevolach* there to pass the Winter, in a fat and plentiful Country, where they might live with ease and pleasure.

The Prince of *Tanais*, fearing least the Emperours sickness should cause an alteration in mens minds, and troubles in his Government, resolved, after he had discoursed with *Axalla*, to depart with his Troops into *Persia*. These two Princes ingaged themselves one to the other with an Oath to seek to promote and favour one anothers interests. *Axalla* delayed the attempt upon the Empire of *Greece* till the following Spring. He intended then to destroy it, because he was resolved to disable that Emperour from helping the *Turks*, he having been so indiscreet, as to side with them against his best Benefactor. He soon recovered all the Towns that he had taken from the *Tartars*.

The Prince of *Tanais* was not advanced above twenty Leagues from the Army, when the news of the Emperours death was brought to *Axalla*. He had been long in expectation of a change, he was desirous of news, and yet afraid to hear what would grieve him to the heart.

He

He underſtood by the meſſenger, that this great Prince was dead two dayes after he had received *Axalla*'s Letters of the Victory, which he had won. They cauſed him to rejoyce, for he had a ſound judgement, till the laſt moment of his Life, and gave orders for the Government of the Empire, with as much care as he had ever done before.

When *Axalla* received firſt this ſad news, which he expected, he withdrew himſelf aſide to give way to his tears and violent grief: but he would not ſuffer the Army to know what they had loſt for ſome dayes, he ſuffered not therefore his ſorrow to appear before them, but ſent ſpeedily after the Prince of *Tanais*, to acquaint him with the news, and intreat him to appoint him a place, where he might meet and ſpeak with him, that they together might conſult about their private concerns. According to his deſire they met at a rendevouz.

The diſpatch that *Axalla* received was ſignified by *Sentrochio* the new Emperour, who ſent him orders to leave, with the Governour of the borders, forty thouſand men, and to return with the reſt of the Army through *Perſia*. This meſſenger was followed by a favourite of the new Emperour, who had orders to aſſure *Axalla* of the Emperours affection, that he ſhould have as great an intereſt in him as in the Old Emperour deceaſed, and that he would ever acknowledge the ſervices that *Axalla* had rendered him, and thoſe which he yet expected from him. This Complement proceeded from

his desire to win and prevent him, and his fear of his power; for to speak Truth, he was as it were the Commander of all the forces of the Empire, he had an authority over them, and was highly esteem'd, because of his noble behaviour and late Victories over the *Turks*, which all the Army acknowledged to be due to his experience and resolution. But *Sentrochio* knew him not well, for *Axalla* was a just and a vertuous man, unable to commit a base action, which might blemish his reputation or be contrary to his duty. Therefore he assured his new Lord, that he would be true and faithful to him.

Whiles the Army refreshed themselves, *Axalla* and the Prince of *Tanais* had an enterview at the place appointed. They promised to one another, with an Oath, to be true and faithful to their several interests, and to make no distinction of their concerns, whether they related to their governments, offices, or pensions. They thought it convenient to conceal some few days the Emperours death, but when *Axalla* was returned to his Army, the news was spread all about, as commonly ill news is known before good: He called therefore the Army together, and declared to them, *That the Emperour was dead.*

When this was spoken, it was a lamentable thing to hear the Cryes and the Sighs that were all over the Camp. All wept, Captains and Souldiers, all lamented for the loss of so good a Master and Benefactor. When silence was made, he ask'd them whether they would not

not have for the Young Prince his Son, the ſame affection as for the Father, and promiſe the ſame fidility. They anſwered all, *That they would.* The General afterwards cauſed the Officers of the Army to ingage themſelves by an a new Oath, all the Colours to be covered with black, and the Army to be paid off. He exhorted them again, to honour the memory of *Tamerlan the Great*, who was not dead ſeeing that he ſurvived in the perſon of his Son, which he left behind him for their good. He told them, that this Young Prince ought to be dear to them and eſteem'd, becauſe of his vertues and good qualities. That for the time to come they ſhould all fight under his Colours, and receive from his bounty the rewards due to their ſervices and labours. That therefore they ought to go to be known to him; and that for him he would never forſake them, whiles breath was in his body, he would aſſiſt and recommend them to his Majeſty.

After this diſcourſe *Axalla* choſe the Souldiers whom he intended to leave with the Governour of the Province to keep the Country in awe, and hinder the enemies invaſions: after ſome other Orders given, he marched away with the reſt of the Army, and advanc'd two great days journey towards *Perſia.*

Whiles *Axalla* is in the way, let us take notice of ſome particulars of the death of this great Prince, who left not behind him his fellow in the World. He had often ſought in

vain for help from the skill of the most famous Physitians, but when he saw, notwithstanding all their endeavours, that his distemper increased more and more, and that he could not avoid the payment of the ordinary tribute of Nature. He called for *Sentrochio* his eldest Son, to whom he spake in the presence of *Odmar*, and of the chief of his Council. He gave him an account of all the actions of his life beginning by the retreat of his Father the Prince of *Sachetay*, from all worldly business to employ himself in divine contemplation and Prayers. He told him, that when he left him the Soveraignity of his Dominions, he gave him three great men to assist him to bear part of his burden, and advise him for the best. That onely *Odmar*, the youngest of the three, was then alive. That he had been willing to submit to their good Counsels in things relating to Peace and War, and had never any cause to repent of it. That the great credit and reputation that he had gain'd, when he was very young, by the famous Victory over the Moscovites, who were become so dreadful to all *Asia*, was the effect of their wise counsels, rather than the work of hazard or fortune. He told him, that the bringing down of the *Moscovites*, whom he had made to be tributary to him, and the lustre of some vertues that shined in him, had obliged his neighbours and his kindred to seek his acquaintance and affinity, and caused the Emperour his Uncle to alter his design of dividing his Empire amongst

mongſt the greateſt Lords of his Court, whom he loved beſt before; but then he rejoyced to prefer to them the Conquerour of the common enemy of their Nation, and a Nephew for whom nature and the nearneſs of blood pleaded in his heart. That it was this that had raiſed him to the Empire of the *Tartars*, that gave him the Emperours Daughter in marriage, becauſe he hoped that he would eaſe him of his burden in his old age, by managing for him his publick affairs and ſcattering away all diviſions and parties through the reputation, and dread of his forces. He told him, that the Emperours expectation had not been diſappointed, that whiles he lived he honoured and loved him as his Lord and Father. That he had behaved himſelf ſo uprightly as well towards his Father as towards his Subjects, that when the Emperour died he ſucceeded to the Throne without any contradiction or commotion, for all ſhewed themſelves willing to obey. So that he ſucceeded, as well to the affections of the people, as to the authority over them. That ſince twenty years that he had enjoyed this vaſt Empire, he had been alwayes faithfully ſerved. That he gave God thanks that the promiſes, which the Emperour his Unkle had made of the rewards, which were due to his Subjects for their ſervices, he had had opportunity and means to diſcharge; for the happineſs of his Armies had inabled him to pay all his Unkles and his own obligations and debts. He continued to him his diſcourſe in this manner. *I leave thee, my Son, theſe for*

thy

thy Servants, who deserve all of them to be Kings. Honour them and reign amongst them. They will serve thee affectionately, and will pardon the mistakes and miscarriages of thy youth. Their remembrance of Tamerlan, *and their own vertues will oblige them to be true to thy concerns, and to their duty.*

After this, taking *Odmar* by the hand, he removed him from the place where he sat to make him go to the right side of his bed, and then casting once more his eyes upon his Son on the left side, he spoke to him thus again. *This side shall be kept for* Axalla, *who is absent. His faithfulness and his affection for me, and his Noble Actions are so known and famous all over the Empire, and to my self, that I will say no more of him. I command you, my Son, to believe* Odmars *and* Axalla's *Counsells, as I have alwayes done to my advantage, for the Prince of* Tanais *I shall say nothing of him, his services and fidelity speak sufficiently for him.* He told him also, that because he was his Kinsman, he knew that the Prince would suffer death rather than act contrary to his duty. That he recommended to him all the Princes, Lords, and Captaines, who were then before his eyes, and those that were absent, who had served him so faithfully in so many Wars, whereof the Victories and successes had gained so much glory to the *Parthian* name, and rendered the Empire one of the most flourishing of the World. That he left it to him to command it, because he was his Son, though there was

no

no other deſerveing in him, but the hopes that he gave of his perſon. Afterwards *he reached* out his hand to all the Princes and Lords about his bed, with theſe words directed to his Son. *In theſe perſons cheifly your Empire and happineſs will conſiſt.* Then he beckned to his Chancellour to draw near, and ask'd from him his Seal, which he delivered to the young Prince, and cauſed the Prince to reſtore it again to the Chancellour. He was afterwards a while without ſpeaking, but preſently he began again, *my Son*, ſaid he, *Love juſtice, ſhew it to the poor as well as to the rich; to the mean man as well as to the great; it is your Office, your Chancellour will ſometimes help you: Remember that the ſword that you bear is only to put in execution the decrees of juſtice; therefore the Wars that you ſhall undertake muſt be juſt, then you may promiſe to you ſelf ſucceſs.*

Whiles he was talking thus to the Prince, the Chancellour being near his perſon, a great noiſe was heard in the next Chamber. The Emperour enquired what might be the cauſe. A Lord at that inſtant coming in, ſent from *Axalla*, brought with him tydings of two great Victories, which his Army in *Natolia* had obtained againſt the *Turks*. This meſſenger gave him an account of all the paſſages of the two ingagements, which had been manag'd with Wiſdome and valour by his brave General; he told the Emperour at laſt that his Valliant Soldiers were in hopes to ſee his Majeſty amongſt them aſſoon as the

ſeaſon of the year would permit, to ſubdue the Empire of *Greece*, which would be eaſily accompliſhed, becauſe the enemies were diſcouraged and in a great fear. But the Emperour, who was then no longer deſirous of earthly honours, anſwered with a ſmiling countenance That he had never queſtioned the affections that his Soldiers had to promote his glory, but that he knew himſelf called by a greater Lord than himſelf to a happyer conqueſt and to a higher place, unto which he was going. Tell, ſaid he, to that Lord, *Tell* Axalla, *that I deſire him, for the time to come, to obey my Son.* Then taking from his finger a Ring of a great value, he delivered it to him with this order. *Carry this token of my Love to your General, and let him take it as an aſſurance, that I am well ſatisfied with his ſervices and fidelity.* He inquired afterwards whether all the Officers, that were known to him in his Army were in health, and recommended every one of them to his Son according to his quality and deſervings. Then the Prince of *Tanais* came again into his mind. He deſired his Son to love him as his Kinſman, and to maintain him in the Offices and Governments, which he had given him, becauſe he was worthy of them; for he aſſured him, that the Prince would be faithful to him. Then with a louder voice than before he told *Sentrochio*. That if ever he had any reaſon to be abſent from his Army in times of War, he ſhould not truſt

it

it in any other persons hands but *Azalla*. But he advised him to command it himself as often as he could, for it was dangerous to trust it in other hands, and it was the duty of the *Parthian* Emperours to dwell with their Souldiers in the Army, as a Father amongst his Children. He told him by the practice of this lesson he should be able to keep the great Empire that he left him, and render himself by his vertue worthy to succeed him. At last he advised him to be mild, courteous to his friends, dreadful to his enemies, but *when they shall sue for Peace refuse them not, forgive your private wrongs, but punish severely the wickedness committed against the state of your Subjects.* All this while the young Prince wept bitterly, but *Tamerlan*, when he held this discourse, had a greater Majesty and beauty upon his countenance than ordinary. He sent away afterwards his Son to the Empress his Mother to endeavour to comfort her by his presence.

When the young Prince was gone he called for *Odmar*, and recommended to his care his young Son, intreating him to Love him, and to be faithful to him. He told him also, that it was his will that his second Son should be brought up and taught to obey his Elder Brother. *I know for certain that the peace and preservation of this Empire depends upon the Union and Love of the Brethren.*

He

He sent for them both a while after to give them his last blessing, when they were before him he commanded the youngest to be obedient to his elder Brother, and both, he commanded to honour the Empress their Mother; when he gave them his blessing it was observed that he touch'd the head, of *Sentrochio*, and put it down lower with his hand, but he lifted up the head of the younger by bearing up his chin. This was look'd upon as a presage, that *Letrochio* the youngest should rise to the Empire, and overthrow the power of his brother, as it happened afterwards, when they quarrelled, by their variance they ruined the Empire of *Tamerlan*.

The Emperour passed the next night very quietly, about break of day, according to his custome he called for those persons who had any business with him. The Letters, that were to be sent to *Axalla*, concerning the victories that he had got, were brought to him, which he signed without pain or without discovering any alteration in his countenance. But a few minutes after, when sleep began to ease upon his senses, they that were about him perceived that his soul was departing to another world. They sent to call for the young Emperour, who came in good time to close his eye lids, shedding a fountain of tears as well as the rest of his Servants.

Two hours after *Sentrochio* was proclamed

ed Emperour, and Letters were dispatched to all the Governours of the Provinces, signed with his hand: After this the Army was called together by his orders, to the Souldiers he gave mony and great gifts, to his Fathers old Servants entertaining them with a speech. But would not offer to change any thing in the Army, till he had seen Prince *Axalla*, and bin with the Imperial Army. When this young Prince came to be Emperour he was not above nineteen years of age. He was beautiful and much like his Father. Every one judged that he would be able, with the assistance of his wise Consellours, to maintain with Honour his large Empire. But the too great affection of the Empress for *Letrochio* caused a jealousie in the eldest Brother, which set them at a distance, and divided them and the Empire. In this particular, They became like their fore-fathers, and imitated their follies, for they ruined, by the divisions and hatred of Brothers, the Empire of their predecessors, which *Tamerlan* had recovered and raised up by his vertue and courage, and render'd the most glorious and most flourishing Empire of the world.

FINIS.

TRINITY COLLEGE LIBRARY. CAMBRIDGE